

EducT

518

71.448.10

CLASSICAL WORKS.

LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

Harkness's Introductory Latin Book, intended as an Elementary Drill-Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language.

— Latin Grammar, for Schools and Colleges. Revised Edition

— Elements of Latin Grammar, for Schools.

— Latin Reader, with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary.

— Practical Introduction to Latin Composition, for Schools and Colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with special Reference to Idioms and Synonyms. (Just published.)

— Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, with Notes, Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, etc.

— Cicero's Select Orations, with Notes, etc.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar.* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo. 839 pages.

— Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo. 836 pages.

Cornelius Nepos,* with Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo. 350 pages.

Benz's Latin Version of the New Testament. 12mo. 291 pages.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo. 408 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

PROF. HARKNESS'S SERIES

OF

LATIN AND GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.*

AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK, INTENDED AS AN ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK on the Inflections and Principles of the Language. Price, \$1.25.

A LATIN GRAMMAR, FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. Revised Edition. 12mo. Price, \$1.75.

THE ELEMENTS OF LATIN GRAMMAR, FOR SCHOOLS.

A LATIN READER. With References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. Price, \$1.50.

A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN COMPOSITION. FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with Special Reference to Idioms and Synonymes. (Just published.) Price, \$1.50.

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR. With Notes, Dictionary, etc. (*In press.*)

CICERO'S SELECT ORATIONS. With Notes, etc. (*In preparation.*)

A FIRST GREEK BOOK, COMPRISING AN OUTLINE OF GRAMMAR and an INTRODUCTORY READER. Price, \$1.75.

This series has received the unqualified commendation of many of the most eminent classical professors and teachers in our country, and is already in use in every State of the Union, and, indeed, in nearly all our leading classical institutions of every grade, both of school and college. Each volume, as it has issued from the press, has been received with a degree of enthusiasm unsurpassed in our experience with text-books. The publication of the series marks, it is believed, an era in the classical education of our country. We ask the attention of teachers to these works, in the conviction that they furnish a better course of elementary classical instruction than can elsewhere be found in our language.

The Latin Text-Books in this series may be arranged in three distinct courses, adapted to the wants of different schools.

* The present series, it will be observed, dispenses with the use of the author's *First and Second Latin Books*, published many years ago.

FIRST, OR FULL COURSE.**1. Introductory Latin Book.**

This volume, as the name implies, is introductory to the entire series. It is intended to be placed in the hands of every beginner in Latin, and aims to furnish him the very knowledge which he especially needs to enable him to start aright in his course. All the grammatical portions of the work are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar, to which it is introductory.

2. Grammar, Reader, and Latin Composition.

These three works are intended to be commenced in concert. The first will accompany the student throughout his whole course of Latin study; the second is introductory to Latin authors; while the third furnishes a progressive series of exercises in writing Latin, so prepared as to run parallel with the usual course of reading in that language.

3. Caesar, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.**4. Cicero, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.**

The full course is intended for all those who are preparing for college, or who hope to make any considerable proficiency in the Latin language and literature. It may, however, be varied by the substitution of the author's Elements of Latin Grammar in place of the Grammar itself, in those schools where, for any reason, a small manual is thought desirable.

SECOND. COURSE.**1. Grammar, Reader, Latin Composition.****2. Caesar, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.****3. Cicero, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.**

This course is the same as the first, with the omission of the Introductory Latin Book, and is intended only for those who are compelled to limit themselves to a short preparatory course. Indeed, even in such cases, the author believes that a term or two spent on the Introductory Book, would in the end not only promote accuracy of scholarship, but actually save time. This course may also be varied by the substitution of the Elements of Latin Grammar in place of the Grammar itself.

THIRD COURSE.**1. Introductory Latin Book.****2. Elements of Latin Grammar, Reader.****3. Caesar, Elements continued.**

This short course is intended only for those who, unable to do more than to master the general principles of the language, yet desire to prepare themselves by this means to appreciate the idioms and etymology of their own language.

Wm. F. Wyers, Princ. Academy, Westchester, Pa.: "It is, I think, in many vital points superior to any and all Latin Grammars at present in use in the schools and colleges of this country."—**Rev.**

M. B. Anderson, LL. D., Pres. University of Rochester, N. Y.: "In my judgment, this is the best Latin Grammar accessible to the American student."—**Rev.** **Prof. A. Hovey**, D. D., Theological Seminary, Newton, Mass.: "It is, I think, by far the best manual of Latin Grammar in our language. It is a model book, clear, concise, correct, and philosophical."

Prof. C. A. Aikin, Princeton College, N. J.: "I am very much

pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar."—**Prof. J. F. Spence**, Institute, Knoxville, Tenn.: "It is the best work of the kind I have ever examined."—**Prof. A. J. Thompson**, Abingdon College, Ill.: "I think Harkness's Grammar decidedly the best I have seen."

Prof. S. B. Kieffer, Heldorf College, Tiffin, Ohio: "I find it decidedly superior to any grammar with which I have yet become acquainted."—

Rev. Dr. A. D. Sandborn, Pres. Northwestern College: "I seldom recommend any book, but I must say of Harkness's Latin Grammar, that I never saw its equal."

LATIN READER.

Prof. A. S. Packard, Bowdoin College, Maine: "This is an excellent introductory book."—

S. P. Bates, Dep. Supt. Pub. Schools, Pa.: "This work is a marvel of excellence. It enunciates the true principles of the science of translation."—**Prof. F. Carter**, Williams College, Mass.: "I rejoice that there is at last published in our country a series of Latin works really adapted to the wants of beginners."

Prof. M. B. Brown, S. S. C., Notre Dame Univ., Ind.: "I consider it a most valuable text-book, eminently calculated to promote education in the highest sense of the term."—**A. P. Stone**, High School, Portland, Maine: "It is the very best manual for elementary instruction in Latin with which I am acquainted."—**Prof.**

O. L. Castle, Shurtleff College, Ill.: "It is a truly admirable work, just what I have desired."

Prof. Oscar Howes, Shurtleff College, Ill.: "Harkness's Latin Grammar, indisputably superior to all others, is rendered even more serviceable by this fitting companion."—**Professor Jas. Mudge**, Pennington College, N. J.: "The Grammar and Reader are both far superior to any thing previously produced."

Prof. W. W. Goodwin, Harvard University: "It seems to me a most valuable work."—**C. V. Spear**, Institute, Pittsfield, Mass.: "The Grammar and Reader furnish a better introduction to the Latin than can elsewhere be found in our language."

B. R. McKoon, Seminary, Whitesboro, N. Y.: "I say most heartily and unhesitatingly that Harkness's Reader is the best I have ever seen."

—**Prof. J. R. Boise**, University of Chicago: "I think it just such a book as I should like to use with a class of beginners in Latin."

INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

Wm. F. Wyers, Academy, West Chester, Pa.: "This is a most valuable Introduction to the distinguished author's other Latin works. The author's Latin Grammar, Latin Reader, and First Greek Book, are the text-books in my school." — **Prof. O. Howes**, Shurtleff College, Ill.: "This is undoubtedly the best book of its kind to be found in our language." — **S. M. Capron**, Latin School, Hartford, Conn.: "With such text-books in his hand, the scholar may easily grow enthusiastic in the study of the Latin."

A. H. Buck, late Princ. Latin School, Roxbury, Mass.: "Like the author's Grammar, this is the only work of its kind which we Americans can afford to use." — **Prof. W. A. Stevens**, Denison

University, O.: "It is just the book that is needed." — **Rev. D. Leach**, Supt. Public Schools, Prov., R. I.: "It is just the book needed to meet the wants of beginners in Latin. It cannot be too highly commended."

E. R. Adams, Academy, East Bloomfield, N. J.: "I can say plainly, and without reservation, that it is the best work for beginners in Latin that I have ever seen." — **Pres. A. D. Sandborn**, Northwestern College, Minn.: "It is a gem of a book, and contains just what the beginner needs to learn. We have adopted Harkness's Classical Course." — **E. D. Hovey**, Princ. Rome Academy Rome, N. Y.: "I am highly delighted with it. Now I have a genuine progressive Latin course."

FIRST GREEK BOOK.

Rev. B. Sears, D. D., LL. D., late Pres. Brown University: "This is an admirable work, both in plan and execution." — **C. C. Felton, LL. D.**, late Pres. Harvard University: "I was so much pleased with the work, that I read nearly every word. I think the plan admirable."

Prof. J. Hadley, Yale College: "It will be found highly serviceable in the work of elementary instruction." — **Prof. E. S. Gregory**, Reserve College, Ohio: "I think it the best book for beginners I ever saw."

H. S. Taylor, LL. D., Princ. Phillips's Academy, Andover, Mass.: "It will be found an unusually attractive book for those beginning Greek." — **Prof. G. R. Bliss**, Lewisburg University: "I have seen no book which is

suited to facilitate so complete a knowledge of the subject in so short a time and in so pleasant a manner."

Rev. Dr. John J. Owen, New York College: "It cannot well fail of being a favorite book in our academies and classical schools."

— **Prof. W. S. Tyler**, Amherst College: "The Syntax is remarkably perspicuous in its analysis of sentences and its deduction of rules."

Prof. T. Chase, Haverford College: "This is an admirable work, and a great improvement on our previous text-books." — **Rev. Austin Phelps, D. D.**, Pres. Andover Theol. Seminary: "I am much pleased with it. It seems to me distinguished for its clear statements and its simple and scholarly arrangements."

3 2044 097 054 928

36

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Horace, The Works of. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGIS. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

Tacitus's Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

Virgil's Eneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader. By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

Acts of the Apostles, according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 297 pages.

— **Second Part to the above.*** 12mo. 248 pages.

 SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

L. P. Bachelder

A N

INTRODUCTORY

L A T I N B O O K,

INTENDED AS AN

ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,

ON THE

INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

B Y

ALBERT HARKNESS,

Professor in Brown University.

AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

90, 92 & 94 GRAND STREET.

1871.

Edue T 918.11.448.10



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by
ALBERT HARKNESS,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

P R E F A C E.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

C O N T E N T S.

P A R T F I R S T.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

P A R T S E C O N D.

ETYMOLOGY.

C H A P T E R I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension	28
Exercise XI.	29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions	30
Exercise XII.	33
Third Declension	35
Exercise XIII.	37
Comparison of Adjectives	38
Exercise XIV.	39
Numeral Adjectives	40
Exercise XV.	42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns	43
Possessive	44
Demonstrative	44
Relative	45
Interrogative	46
Indefinite	46
Exercise XVI.	47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices	48
Moods	49
Tenses	50
Numbers	50
Persons	51
Conjugation	51
The Verb Sum	52
Exercise XVII.	56
" XVIII.	57
" XIX.	60
First Conjugation	62
Exercise XX.	66

	Page.
Exercise XXI.	67
" XXII.	69
" XXIII.	71
" XXIV.	73
" XXV.	74
" XXVI.	75
" XXVII.	76
Second Conjugation	78
Exercise XXVIII.	82
" XXIX.	83
" XXX.	84
" XXXI.	85
" XXXII.	86
" XXXIII.	87
" XXXIV.	88
Third Conjugation	90
Exercise XXXV.	94
" XXXVI.	95
" XXXVII.	96
" XXXVIII.	97
" XXXIX.	97
" XL.	98
" XLI.	99
Fourth Conjugation	100
Exercise XLII.	104
" XLIII.	104
" XLIV.	105
" XLV.	106
" XLVI.	107
" XLVII.	107
" XLVIII.	108
Verbs in ro	110
Exercise XLIX.	112

PART THIRD.**SYNTAX.****CHAPTER I.****SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.****Section.**

I. Classification of Sentences	114
II. Simple Sentences	115

CHAPTER II.

	SYNTAX OF NOUNS.	
Section.		Page.
I. Agreement of Nouns		117
Exercise L.		117
" LI.		119
II. Nominative		120
Exercise LII.		120
III. Vocative		121
Exercise LIII.		121
IV. Accusative		122
Exercise LIV.		123
" LV.		124
" LVI.		125
V. Dative		126
Exercise LVII.		127
" LVIII.		129
VI. Genitive		130
Exercise LIX.		131
" LX.		132
VII. Ablative		133
Exercise LXI.		135
" LXII.		137
" LXIII.		138
" LXIV.		140
VIII. Cases with Prepositions		141
Exercise LXV.		142
Suggestions to the Learner		143
Latin-English Vocabulary		147
English-Latin Vocabulary		157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl.	abATIVE.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusATIVE.	nom.	nominative.
act.	active.	p.	page.
adv.	adverb.	part.	particle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person.
f.	feminine.	plur., or pl.	plural.
gen.	genitive.	prep.	preposition.
indef.	indefinite.	rel.	relative.
interrog.	interrogative.	sing.	singular.
m.	masculine.	voc.	vocative.

INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.¹

ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes:

I. <i>Vowels</i>	a, e, i, o, u, y.
II. <i>Consonants</i> :—	
1. Liquids	l, m, n, r.
2. Spirants	h, s.
3. Mutes: 1) Labials	p, b, f, v.
2) Palatals	c, g, k, q, j.
3) Linguals	t, d.
4. Double Consonants	x, z.

4. **Combinations of Letters.**—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*,—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*,—*x*=*cs* or *gs*; *z*=*ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

¹ Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

I. ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their *long* or *short* English sounds.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds —*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:² *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.³

3. In penultimate⁴ and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A* unaccented has the sound of *a* final in America: *men'-sa*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound —*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

² Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

³ In these rules, no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

⁴ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys*; except *post, es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res, di'-es, hos, a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A, e, or o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e, i, or y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e*:

1) long: *Cae'-sar (Ce'-sar), Oe'-ta (E'-ta)*.

2) short: *Daed'-ă-lus (Ded'-a-lus), Oed'-i-pus*.

Au as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu . . neuter: neu'-ter.¹

EXERCISE I.

Give the sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs in the following words.

1. Men'-sam,² men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,³ men-sa'-rum.⁴

2. Ho'-ram,⁵ ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,⁶ ho-ra'-rum.⁷ 3. Scho'-la,⁸ scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum.

4. Co-ro'-na,⁸ co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.⁹

¹ *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs; but, when so used, they have the long sound of *i*: *hei, cui*.

² 8, 2; 8, 1. ³ 7, 3; 8, 1. ⁴ 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

⁵ 8, 2; 9; 7, 1. ⁶ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1. ⁷ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

⁸ 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1. ⁹ 7, 3; 8, 1.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae*, and *oe*; and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (*sedo*), *cī'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coē'-na*, *a'-ge* (*a-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (*ka'do*), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound as in *son*, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in *time*: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (*rek'-si*), *ux'-or* (*uk'-sor*).

12. **C, S, T, and X—Aspirated.**—Before *i*, preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c, s, t*, and *x* are aspirated,—*c, s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh, x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*); *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo*, preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

13. **Silent Consonants.**—An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: *Cne'-us* (*Ne'-us*).

EXERCISE II.

Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words.

1. <i>Cī'-vis</i> , ¹ <i>civ'-i-um</i> , <i>civ'-i-bus</i> .	2. <i>Car'-men</i> , ² <i>car'-mi-nis</i> , <i>car'-mi-ne</i> . ³	3. <i>Rex</i> , ⁴ <i>re'-gis</i> , ⁵ <i>re'-gi</i> , <i>re'-gum</i> . ⁵	4. <i>Ca'-put</i> , ⁶ <i>cap'-i-tis</i> , <i>cap'-i-tum</i> .	5. <i>A'-ci-em</i> , ⁷ <i>a'-ci-e</i> , <i>a'-ci-es</i> . ⁸
6. <i>Ars</i> , ⁸ <i>ar'-tis</i> , <i>ar'-tes</i> , ⁸ <i>ar'-ti-um</i> . ⁹				

¹ 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁶ 11, 1, and 3.

² 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

⁷ 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.

³ 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

⁸ 11, 2, 1).

⁴ 11, 4.

⁹ 12.

⁵ 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.¹1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound;² but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel-sounds are as follows:

<i>a</i>	like <i>ä</i> in father:	e.g., <i>a'-ra</i> .
<i>e</i>	" <i>ä</i> made:	" <i>plé'-bes</i> .
<i>i</i>	" <i>ē</i> • me:	" <i>i'-ri</i> .
<i>o</i>	" <i>ō</i> no:	" <i>o'-ro</i> .
<i>u</i>	" <i>ō</i> do:	" <i>u'-num</i> .
<i>y</i>	" <i>ē</i> me;	" <i>Ny'-sa</i> .

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like *a* in made: e.g., *aē-tas*, *coē-lum*.
au " *ou* " *out*: " *au'-rum*.³

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method; but it varies somewhat in different countries.

EXERCISE III.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words,
according to the Continental Method.*

1. *Hō'-ră*, *hō'-rām*, *hō'-rās*, *hō'-rīs*, *hō'-rae*, *hō-rā'-rūm*.
2. *Glō'-rī-ă*, *glō'-rī-ām*, *glō'-rī-ae*.
3. *Dō'-nūm*, *dō'-nī*, *dō'-*

¹ If the *English Method* is adopted as the standard in the school, this outline of the *Continental Method* should be omitted.

² These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

³ In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately; but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs, with nearly the same sound as in English.

nō, dō'-nă, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm,
cī'-vēs, cīv'-ī-ūm, cīv'-ī-būs.

SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel-sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus: *mo'-re*, *vi'-ce*, *a-cu'-te*, *per-suā'-de*.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long; short, or common.¹

21. **Long.**—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. **Short.**—A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *di'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hil*.²

23. **Common.**—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally³ short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri*.

24. The signs ' , ' , ' denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ă-grō-rūm*.⁴

¹ Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

² No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

³ A vowel is said to be *naturally* short when it is short in its own *nature*; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

⁴ By referring to 14, it will be seen, that, in the Continental Method, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (26). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus, in *rēx*, *ürbs*, *ärēs*, *söł*, the vowels are all long in quantity;

ACCENTUATION.

I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons, nos.*

26. Other words are accented as follows:¹

1. *Words of two syllables* — always on the first: *men'-sa.*
2. *Words of more than two syllables* — on the penult² if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the antepenult:³ *ho-nō'-ris, con'-sū-lis.*

II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent, — on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity; otherwise on the third: *mon'-u-e'-runt, mon'-u-e-ra'-mus, in-stau'-ra-vé'-runt.*

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif"-i-cen-tis'-st-mus.*

EXERCISE IV.

Accent and pronounce the following Words.

1. Cōrōnă,³ cōrōnae, cōrōnārūm.⁴
2. Gemmae,⁵ gemmām,
gemmarūm.
3. Sāpientiae,⁶ ămīcītiae, justītiae, glōriae.⁷

but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *ăvĕ, mărĕ*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 26), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

¹ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

² Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

³ 26, 2; 7, 3, 1). ⁵ 11, 1; 26, 1. ⁷ 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

⁴ 26, 2; 27. ⁶ 27; 8, 3, 1); 12.

4. Săpientiăm, ămicătiăm, justătiăm, gloriăm. 5. Săpientiă, ămicătiă, justătiă, gloriă.

PART SECOND.

E T Y M O L O G Y.

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech¹ are — *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

C H A P T E R I.

N O U N S.

31. A Noun, or Substantive, is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicero*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dōmus*, house.

1. A Proper Noun is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicero*, *Rōma*.

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *ēquus*, horse.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

GENDER.

33. There are three genders,² — *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

¹ Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech.*

² In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.
2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhenus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprilis*, April.

II. FEMININE.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.
2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Delos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:¹

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

¹ The case of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the possessive case (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of possessor.

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form, the several cases are, in general, distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*, in *neuters*, are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin, there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

Genitive Endings.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
<i>ae</i> ,	<i>i</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>ei</i> . ¹

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem² may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

¹ See 119, 1.

² The *stem* is the basis of the word, or the part to which the several endings are added to form the various cases. Thus in the forms, *mensā*, *mensae*, *mensām*, *mensis*, &c., given under 42, it will be observed that *mens* remains unchanged; and that, by the addition of the endings, *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., to it, the several cases are formed. Here *mens* is the *stem*; and *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., are the *case-endings*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ē,—*feminine*; ās and ēs,—*masculine*.¹

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensă,</i>	<i>a table,</i>	ă
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>of a table,</i>	ac
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>to, for, a table,</i>	ae
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensām,</i>	<i>a table,</i>	ăm
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensă,</i>	<i>O table,</i>	ă
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>with, from, by, a table,</i>	ă

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	ac
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensārum,</i>	<i>of tables,</i>	ărūm
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensīs,</i>	<i>to, for, tables,</i>	is
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensās,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	ăs
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>O tables,</i>	ac
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensīs,</i>	<i>with, from, by, tables,</i>	is.

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—With these endings decline:

Ala, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victōria*, victory.

EXERCISE V.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Amicitiă,</i>	<i>ac,² f.³</i>	<i>friendship.</i>
<i>Cōrōnă,</i>	<i>ae, f.</i>	<i>crown.</i>

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

² The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiæ*.

³ Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

Gemmă	ae, f.	gem.
Glōriā,	ae, f.	glory.
Hōrā,	ae, f.	hour.
Justitiā,	ae, f.	justice.
Sāpientiā,	ae, f.	wisdom.
Schōlā,	ae, f.	school.

II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnā,¹ corōnā, corōnae,² corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas.
2. Gemmă, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas.
3. Sapientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, gloriā.
4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam.
5. Sapientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, gloriā.
6. Scholārum, horārum.
7. Scholis, horis.
8. Scholas, horas.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Friendship, friendships.
2. Of³ friendship, of friendships.
3. To friendship, to friendships.
4. By friendship, by friendships.
5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice.
6. Wisdom, glory.
7. With wisdom, with glory.
8. To wisdom, to glory.
9. Of wisdom, of glory.
10. Of a⁴ crown, of a gem.
11. Crowns, gems.
12. With the⁴ crowns, with the gems.
13. Of crowns, of gems.

¹ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

² When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

³ The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiacae*.

⁴ The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown*, *a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in
čr, īr, ūs, os,—masculine; ūm, on,—neuter.

But pure Latin nouns end only in er, ir, us, um, and are declined as follows:

Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.

SINGULAR.

N. servūs	pučr	āgčr	templūm
G. servī	pučrī	āgrī	tempī
D. servō	pučrō	āgrō	tempō
A. servūm	pučrūm	āgrūm	tempūm
V. servē	pučr	āgčr	templūm
A. servō	pučrō	āgrō	tempō

PLURAL.

N. servī	pučrī	āgrī	templā
G. servōrūm	pučrōrūm	āgrōrūm	tempōrūm
D. servīs	pučrīs	āgrīs	tempīs
A. servōs	pučrōs	āgrōs	tempōs
V. servī	pučrī	āgrī	templā
A. servīs.	pučrīs.	āgrīs.	tempīs.

1. Case-Endings.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen that they are declined with the following

Case-endings.

1. ūs.

2. čr.

3. ūm.

SINGULAR.

N. ūs	— ¹	ūm
G. ī	ī	ī
D. ū	ō	ō
A. ūm	ūm	ūm
V. ē	— ¹	ūm
A. ū	ō	ō

¹ The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in er: thus puer is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be pučrūs.

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> i	i	ă
<i>G.</i> ūrūm	ōrūm	ōrūm
<i>D.</i> īs	īs	īs
<i>A.</i> ūs	ōs	ă
<i>V.</i> i	i	ă
<i>A.</i> īs.	īs.	īs.

2. Examples for Practice.—Like *SERVUS*: *annus*, year; *domīnus*, master.—Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law.—Like *AGER*: *fāber*, artisan; *magister*, master.—Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. Paradigms.—Observe

- 1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.: Nom. *puer* for *puērus*, Voc. *puer* for *puēre*.
- 2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.
- 3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38, 3.

EXERCISE VI.

I. Vocabulary.

Dōnūm, i, n.	gift.
Gēnēr, gēnēri, m.	son-in-law.
Libēr, librī, m.	book.
Ocūlūs, i, m.	eye.
Praeceptūm, i, n.	rule, precept.
Sōcēr, sōcēri, m.	father-in-law.
Tyrannūs, i, m.	tyrant.
Verbūm, i, n.	word.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ocūlus, ocūli, ocūlo, ocūlūm, ocūle, oculōrum, ocūlis, ocūlos.
2. Socer, socēri, socēro, socērum, socerōrum, socēris, socēros.
3. Servi, tyranni.
4. Puēri, genēri.
5. Agri, librī.
6. Templi, doni.
7. Servo, tyranno.
8. Puērum, genērum.
9. Agrōrum, librōrum.
10. Templa, dona.
11. Servum, servos.
12. Genēri, generōrum.
13. Agri, agrō-

rum. 14. Dono, donis. 15. Verbum, praeceptum. 16. Verbi, praecepti.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The slave, the slaves.
2. For the slave, for the slaves.
3. Of the slave, of the slaves.
4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law.
5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law.
6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law.
7. The boy, the field.
8. The boys, the fields.
9. The gift, the gifts.
10. With the gift, with the gifts.
11. The tyrant, the boy, the book, the precept.
12. Of the tyrant, of the boy, of the book, of the precept.

SECOND DECLENSION—CONTINUED.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:¹

Cluilius rex mōritur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline ² it.
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,³ and the Rule for it.

¹ A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius the king*. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of *Cluilius*, — *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

² Adjectives in the Comparative or in the Superlative degree (160) should also be compared (162).

³ By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regina*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

MODEL.

Artēmisiā rēgīnā, Artemisia the queen.

Regīna is a noun (31) of the First Declension (42), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *regīn* (41). Singular: *re-gīnā, regīnae, regīnae, regīnam, regīnā, regīnā*. Plural: *regīnae, regīnārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 35, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in case, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

EXERCISE VII.

I. Vocabulary.

Caiūs, ii, m.	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
Filiā, ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
Hastā, ae, f.	<i>spear</i> .
Pisistratūs, i, m.	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmūs, i, m.	<i>branch</i> .
Rēgīnā, ae, f.	<i>queen</i> .
Tulliā, ae, f.	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.
Victōria, ae, f.	<i>Victoria</i> , Queen of England.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ramus, hastā. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae.
4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum.
7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum.
10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis.
12. Templum, templā. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistratūs tyrannus.¹
15. Pisistrati tyranni. 16. Pisistrato tyranno.
17. Tulliā filiā. 18. Tulliae filiae. 19. Tulliam filiam.

II. Translate into Latin.

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.

¹ *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistratūs*, according to Rule II. 363.

3. Of the tyrant, of the crown.
4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns.
5. To the tyrant, to the crown.
6. To the tyrants, to the crowns.
7. The book, the books.
8. With the book, with the books.
9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus.
10. Of the queen, for the queen.
11. Caius the slave.¹
12. Of Caius the slave.
13. For Caius the slave.
14. Victoria the queen.
15. For Victoria the queen.
16. Of Victoria the queen.

THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:²

o, or, os, er, es increasing in the genitive. +

II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive; s preceded by a consonant. +

III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us. +

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the Nominative Singular. These all end in e, s, or x.

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the Nominative Singular.

In Class II, the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consulis*; stem, *consul*, a consul: *leo*, *leonis*; stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), lion: *carmen*, *carminis*; stem, *carmin* (Nom. changes in to en), song.

¹ See Rule II. 363.

² That is, nouns with these endings are masculine.

50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*,¹ and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Nubes, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>	Avis, <i>f.</i> <i>bird.</i>	Urbs, <i>f.</i> <i>city.</i>	Rex, <i>m.</i> <i>king.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> nūbēs	avīs	urbs	rex ²
<i>G.</i> nubīs	avīs	urbīs	rēgīs
<i>D.</i> nubī	avī	urbī	rēgī
<i>A.</i> nubēm	avēm	urbēm	rēgēm
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avīs	urbs	rex
<i>A.</i> nubē	avē	urbē	rēgē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	rēgēs
<i>G.</i> nublēm	avīlēm	urbīlēm	rēglēm
<i>D.</i> nublēbūs	avīlēbūs	urbīlēbūs	rēglēbūs
<i>A.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	rēgēs
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	rēgēs
<i>A.</i> nublēbūs.	avīlēbūs.	urbīlēbūs.	rēglēbūs.

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*, and **x**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Miles, <i>m.</i> <i>soldier.</i>	Lapis, <i>m.f.</i> <i>stone.</i>	Ars, <i>f.</i> <i>art.</i>	Judex, <i>m. and f.</i> <i>judge.</i>
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------	--

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> milēs	lapīs	ars	jūdex ²
<i>G.</i> militēs	lapīdīs	artīs	judīcīs
<i>D.</i> militī	lapīdī	artī	judīcī
<i>A.</i> militēm	lapīdēm	artēm	judīcēm
<i>V.</i> milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
<i>A.</i> militē	lapīdē	artē	judīcē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> militēs	lapīdēs	artēs	judīcēs
<i>G.</i> militām	lapīdām	artīām	judīcām

¹ *Impure*; i.e., preceded by a consonant.

² X in rex = *gs*; *g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending: but in judex, *x* = *cs*; *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

<i>D.</i> militibūs	lapidibūs	artibūs	judicibūs
<i>A.</i> militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
<i>V.</i> militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
<i>A.</i> militibūs.	lapidibūs.	artibūs.	judicibūs.

III. Nouns in **as**, **os**, **us**, and **e**:—those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.

Civitas, <i>f.</i>	Nepos, <i>m.</i>	Virtus, <i>f.</i>	Mare, <i>n.</i>
state.	grandson.	virtue.	sea.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> civitās	něpōs	virtūs	märč
<i>G.</i> civitātis	nepotīs	virtūtīs	marīs
<i>D.</i> civitātī	nepotī	virtūtī	marī
<i>A.</i> civitātēm	nepotēm	virtūtēm	marč
<i>V.</i> civitās	něpōs	virtūs	marč
<i>A.</i> civitātē	nepotē	virtūtē	marī ²

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> civitātēs	nepotēs	virtūtēs	marīš
<i>G.</i> civitātēm ¹	nepotēm	virtūtēm	marītēm
<i>D.</i> civitatibūs	nepotibūs	virtutibūs	maribūs
<i>A.</i> civitātēs	nepotēs	virtūtēs	marīš
<i>V.</i> civitātēs	nepotēs	virtūtēs	marīš
<i>A.</i> civitatibūs.	nepotibūs.	virtutibūs.	maribūs.

51. CLASS II.—WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING. 

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:—with stem unchanged in *Nominative*.

Sol, <i>m.</i> ¹	Consul, <i>m.</i> ¹	Passer, <i>m.</i>	Vultur, <i>m.</i>
sun.	consul.	sparrow.	vulture.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> sōl	consūl	passēr	vultūr
<i>G.</i> sōlīs	consūlīs	passērīs	vultūrīs
<i>D.</i> sōlī	consūlī	passērī	vultūrī
<i>A.</i> sōlēm	consūlēm	passērēm	vultūrēm
<i>V.</i> sōl	consūl	passēr	vultūr
<i>A.</i> sōlē	consūlē	passērē	vultūrē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
<i>G.</i>	consūlūm	passērūm	vultūrūm
<i>D.</i> sōlībūs	consūlībūs	passērībūs	vultūrībūs

¹ Sometimes civitatiūm.² Sometimes mare in poetry.

A. sōlēs	constilēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
V. sōlēs	consilēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
A. sōlibūs.	consilībūs.	passerībūs.	vulturībūs.

II. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—with stem changed in *Nominative*.

Leo, <i>m.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i>	Pastor, <i>m.</i>
X lion.	maiden.	father.	shepherd.

SINGULAR.

N. leo	virgo	pātēr	pastōr
G. leōnīs	virgīnīs	pātīrīs	pastōrīs
D. leōnī	virgīnī	pātīrī	pastōrī
A. leōnēm	virgīnēm	pātērēm	pastōrēm
V. leo	virgo	pātēr	pastōr
A. leōnē	virgīnē	pātērē	pastōrē

PLURAL.

N. leōnēs	virgīnēs	pātēs	pastōrēs
G. leōnūm	virgīnūm	pātūm	pastōrūm
D. leonībūs	virgīnībūs	pātīrībūs	pastōrībūs
A. leōnēs	virgīnēs	pātēs	pastōrēs
V. leōnēs	virgīnēs	pātēs	pastōrēs
A. leonībūs.	virgīnībūs.	pātīrībūs.	pastōrībūs.

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut**:—with stem changed in *Nominative*.

Carmen, <i>n.</i>	Opus, <i>n.</i>	Corpus, <i>n.</i>	Capūt, <i>n.</i>
song.	work.	body.	head.

SINGULAR.

N. carmēn	ōpūs	corpūs	cāpūt
G. carmīnīs	opērīs	corpōrīs	cāpītīs
D. carmīnī	opērī	corpōrī	cāpītī
A. carmēn	ōpūs	corpūs	cāpūt
V. carmēn	ōpūs	corpūs	cāpūt
A. carmīnē	opērē	corpōrē	cāpītē

PLURAL.

N. carmīnā	opērā	corpōrā	cāpītā
G. carmīnūm	opērūm	corpōrūm	cāpītūm
D. carmīnībūs	operībūs	corporībūs	cāpītībūs
A. carmīnā	opērā	corpōrā	cāpītā
V. carmīnā	opērā	corpōrā	cāpītā
A. carmīnībūs.	operībūs.	corporībūs.	cāpītībūs.

52. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> s ¹ (es, is) —— ²	é —— ²
<i>Gen.</i> īs	īs
<i>Dat.</i> ī	ī
<i>Acc.</i> īm (im) ³	like Nom.
<i>Voc.</i> like Nom.	" "
<i>Abl.</i> ī, ī	ē, ī

PLURAL.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> īs	ā, īā
<i>Gen.</i> īm, īum	ūm, īūm
<i>Dat.</i> ībūs	ībūs
<i>Acc.</i> īs	ā, īā
<i>Voc.</i> īs	ā, īā
<i>Abl.</i> ībūs.	ībūs.

53. **Declension.**—To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the Nominative Singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

¹ In nouns in *x* (= cs or gs), *s* is the case-ending, and the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem.

² The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

³ The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE:

Class I.

Rūpes,	<i>Gen.</i> rupis, f.	rock ;	hos̄pes,	<i>Gen.</i> hosp̄it̄is, m.	guest.
vestis,	vestis, f.	garment ;	cusp̄is,	cusp̄idis, f.	spear.
trabs,	träbis, f.	beam ;	mons,	montis, m.	mountain.
lex,	lēgis, f.	law ;	ăpex,	ap̄lcis, m.	summit.
libertas,	libertātis, f.	liberty ;	sălus,	salūtis, f.	safety.
sedile,	sedilis, n.	seat ;			

Class II.

Exsul,	<i>Gen.</i> exsūlis, m. and f.	exile ;	dölor,	<i>Gen.</i> dolōris, m.	pain.
actio,	actiōnis, f.	action ;	imāgo,	imagiñis, f.	image.
anser,	ansēris, m.	goose ;	frāter,	fratris, m.	brother.
nōmen,	nomiñis, n.	name ;	tempus,	tempōris, n.	time.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :¹

Catōnis ūratiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors H̄amilcāris, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Catōnis ūratiōnēs, *Cato's orations*.

Catōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (31, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class II., as it has no Nominative Ending (49, II. and 51, II.): STEM, *Catōn* (41); Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped, 49, II.). Singu-

¹ The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of another noun: *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius the king*; *Catōnis oratiōnes*, *Cato's orations*, or *the orations of Cato*. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *Cluilius* by showing *what Cluilius* is meant,—*Cluilius the king*. In a similar manner, the Genitive *Catōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *oratiōnes* by showing *what orations* are meant,—*the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or

lar:¹ *Cato, Catōnis, Catōni, Catōnem, Cato, Catōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 35, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *oratiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: “Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive.”

THIRD DECLENSION—CONTINUED.—CLASS I.²

EXERCISE VIII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Civis, civīs, m. and f.</i>	<i>citizen.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>
<i>Mors, mortis, f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
<i>Pax, pācīs, f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. *Nubis, nubium.* 2. *Nubem, nubes.* 3. *Avis, aves.*
4. *Avi, avībus.* 5. *Urbs, urbes.* 6. *Urbi, urbībus.* 7. *Rex, reges.* 8. *Regis, regum.* 9. *Nubēs, milēs.* 10. *Nubis, milītis.* 11. *Nubem, milītem.* 12. *Rex, judex.* 13. *Regis, judīcis.* 14. *Reges, judīces.* 15. *Civītas, civitātes.* 16. *Virtus, virtūtes.* 17. *Mors regis.³* 18. *Morte regis.* 19. *Mortes regum.* 20. *Virtus judīcis.* 21. *Pacis gloriā.*

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Kings, laws.

thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *oratiōnes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

¹ As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

² This exercise furnishes practice in the declension of nouns belonging to Class I. of the Third Declension. See 50.

³ *Regis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *mors*, according to Rule XVI. 395.

5. Of the king, of the law.
6. Of the kings, of the laws.
7. To the king, to the law.
8. To the kings, to the laws.
9. The law of the state.¹
10. The laws of the state.

THIRD DECLENSION—CONTINUED.—CLASS II.
PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.²

Ad amicum scripsi, I have written to a friend. Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In Itāliā,³ *in Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad amicūm, To a friend.

Amīcum is a noun (31) of the Second Declension (45), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *amic* (41). Singular: *amicus, amīci, amīco, amīcum, amīce, amīco.* Plural: *amicī, amīcōrum, amīcis, amīcos, amīci, amīcis.* It is of the Masculine gender by 45, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: “The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.” The Accusative is used with *ad*.

¹ The Latin word for *of the state* will be in the Genitive, according to Rule XVI. 395.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable at this early stage of the course to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

³ Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*; though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the *Accusative* when it means *into*, and with the *Ablative* when it means *in*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Ad, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>to, towards.</i>
<i>Cicērō, Cicērōnīs, m.</i>	<i>Cicero, the Roman orator.</i>
<i>Consūl, consūlis, m.</i>	<i>consul.¹</i>
<i>Contrā, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against, contrary to.</i>
<i>Exsūl, exsūlis, m. and f.</i>	<i>exile.</i>
<i>Frāter, frātriſ, m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
<i>Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, n.</i>	<i>name.</i>
<i>Orātiō, orātiōnīs, f.</i>	<i>oration, speech.</i>
<i>Orātōr, orātōrīs, m.</i>	<i>orator.</i>
<i>Victōr, victōrīs, m.</i>	<i>victor, conqueror.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. *Leo, leōnis, leōnes.* 2. *Virgo, virgīnis, virgīnes.* 3. *Solis, solem, soles.* 4. *Consūlis, consūlēm, consūles.* 5. *Solibus, consulibus.* 6. *Passēris, vultūris.* 7. *Passērum, vultūrum.* 8. *Patri, pastōri.* 9. *Patres, pastōres.* 10. *Carmen, carmīna.* 11. *Caput, capīta.* 12. *Opēris, corpōris.* 13. *Cicerōnis² oratio.* 14. *Cicerōnis oratiōnes.* 15. *Oratiōne consūlis.* 16. *Ad gloriam.³* 17. *Contra regem.*

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name, 9. Songs,

¹ The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

² See Rule XVI. 395, and Model.

³ The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother.
 12. To¹ the father, to the brother. 13. Contrary to the law.² 14. Contrary to the laws of the state.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in
 us, — *masculine*; u, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .	Cornu, <i>horn</i> .	Case-Endings.
-------------------------	----------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
G. fructūs	cornūs	ūs	ūs
D. fructūm	cornū	ūī	ū
A. fructūm	cornū	ūm	ū
V. fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
A. fructū	cornū	ū	ū

PLURAL.

N. fructūs	cornūā	ūs	uā
G. fructūm	cornūām	ūm	uām
D. fructūbūs	cornūbūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)
A. fructūs	cornūā	ūs	uā
V. fructūs	cornūā	ūs	uā
A. fructūbūs.	cornūbūs.	ībūs (ūbūs).	ībūs (ūbūs).

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus* song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *gēnu*, knee.

¹ *To* should still be regarded as a sign of the Dative, though it may sometimes be rendered by the preposition *ad*.

² See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Adventūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
<i>Antē, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>before.</i>
<i>Caesār, Caesāris, m.</i>	<i>Caesar, a Roman surname.</i>
<i>Cantūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>singing, song.</i>
<i>Conspectūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>sight, presence.</i>
<i>Exercitūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
<i>Hostīs, hostis, m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
<i>Impētūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>attack.</i>
<i>In, prep.</i>	<i>into with acc., in with abl.</i>
<i>Luscīniā, ae, f.</i>	<i>nightingale.</i>
<i>Occāsūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>the setting, as of the sun.</i>
<i>Post, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>after.</i>
<i>Ver, vēris, n.</i>	<i>spring.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. *Fructus, cantus.* 2. *Fructibus, cantibus.* 3. *Cantus lusciniae.¹* 4. *Cantu lusciniae.* 5. *Cantibus lusciniārum.* 6. *Adventus veris.* 7. *Post adventum² veris.¹* 8. *Solis occāsus.* 9. *Post solis occāsum.* 10. *Caesāris adventu.* 11. *Ante adventum Caesāris.* 12. *Impētus hostium.* 13. *Impētu hostium.* 14. *In conspectu exercitūs.*

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After³

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 22.

² Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 24.

³ See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 24. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the nightingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, — *feminine*, and are declined as follows:

Dies, <i>day</i> . ¹	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
---------------------------------	---------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diēi	rēi	ei
<i>D.</i> diēi	rēi	ei
<i>A.</i> diēm	rēm	ēm
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diē	rē	ē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diērūm	rērūm	ērūm
<i>D.</i> diēbūs	rēbūs	ēbūs
<i>A.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diēbūs.	rēbūs.	ēbūs.

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

E in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice.**²—*Acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

¹ *Dies*, day, is an exception in Gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

² Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want, in the Plural, the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. These cases must, therefore, be omitted in declining these examples.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.¹

SINGULAR.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	D. V.
Fem.	Masc., Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Neut.
N. ā	ūs — ² ūm	s (es, is) ³ — ē —	ūs	ūs
G. ae	I	I	I	ēI
D. ae	ō	ō	I	ēI
A. ām	ūm	ūm	ēm (īm)	ēm
V. ā	ē —	ūm	like nom.	ēs
A. ā	ō	ō	ē (I)	ē

PLURAL.

N. ae	I	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
G. ārūm	ōrūm	ōrūm	ūm (īm)	ūm (īm)	ūm	ūm	ērūm
D. is	is	is	ibūs	ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs	ēbūs
A. ās	ōs	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
V. ae	I	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
A. Is.	is	is.	ibūs	ibūs.	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs.

EXERCISE XI.

I. Vocabulary.

Aciēs, āciēi, f.	battle-array, army.
Amicūs, ī, m.	friend.
Cibūs, ī, m.	food.
Dē, prep. with abl.	concerning.
Diēs, diēi, m. and f.	day.
Faciēs, faciēi, f.	face, appearance.
Nūmērūs, ī, m.	number, quantity.
Rēs, rēi, f.	thing, affair.
Spēciēs, spēciēi, f.	appearance.
Spēs, spēi, f.	hope.
Victōriā, ae, f.	victory.

¹ This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting : *er* and *ir* in Dec. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45, 1).

³ The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Diēi, diērum, diēbus.*
2. *Aciēi, aciem, acie.*
3. *Diem, speciem.*
4. *Die, specie.*
5. *Res, spes.*
6. *Rei, spei.*
7. *Victoriae spes.*
8. *Victoriae spe.*
9. *Diēi horae.*
10. *Numērus diērum.*
11. *Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies.*
12. *Gloriae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciei.*
13. *Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days.
2. Of the day, of the days.
3. For the day, for the days.
4. The thing, the things.
5. With the thing, with the things.
6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things.
7. Of the thing, of the things.
8. Concerning the battle-array.
9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope.
10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

C H A P T E R II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.	Fem., Dec. I.	Neut., Dec. II.
us — ¹ ,	a,	um.

They are declined as follows:

Bōnus, good.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i> bōnūs	bōnā	bōnūm
<i>Gen.</i> bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i> bonūm	bonām	bonūm
<i>Voc.</i> bonē	bonā	bonūm
<i>Abl.</i> bonō	bonā	bonō;

PLURAL.

Nom.	Gen.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.	Nom.	Gen.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
bonī	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonī	bonōs	bonā	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonā	bonōs.
bonī	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonī	bonōs	bonā	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonā	bonōs.
bonī	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonī	bonōs	bonā	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonā	bonōs.
bonī	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonī	bonōs	bonā	bonōrūm	bonōs	bonā	bonōs.

Liber, free.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i> libēr	<i>Gen.</i> libērī	<i>Dat.</i> libērō	<i>Acc.</i> libērūm	<i>Voc.</i> libēr	<i>Abl.</i> libērō	<i>Nom.</i> libērā	<i>Gen.</i> libērī	<i>Acc.</i> libērām	<i>Voc.</i> libērā	<i>Abl.</i> libērō;
libēr	libērī	libērō	libērūm	libēr	libērō	libērā	libērī	libērām	libērā	libērō;
libērī	libērām	libērōs	libērūm	libērī	libērōs	libērā	libērī	libērām	libērā	libērō;
libērō	libērām	libērās	libērūm	libērō	libērās	libērā	libērō	libērām	libērā	libērō;
libērō	libērām	libērās	libērūm	libērō	libērās	libērā	libērō	libērām	libērā	libērō;

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> libērī	<i>Gen.</i> liberōrūm	<i>Dat.</i> libērīs	<i>Acc.</i> libērōs	<i>Voc.</i> libērī	<i>Abl.</i> libērīs	<i>Nom.</i> libērāe	<i>Gen.</i> liberōrūm	<i>Dat.</i> libērīs	<i>Acc.</i> libērās	<i>Voc.</i> libērāe	<i>Abl.</i> libērīs
libērī	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērōs	libērī	libērīs	libērāe	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērās	libērāe	libērīs
libērāe	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērōs	libērāe	libērīs	libērāe	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērās	libērāe	libērīs
libērāe	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērōs	libērāe	libērīs	libērāe	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērās	libērāe	libērīs
libērāe	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērōs	libērāe	libērīs	libērāe	liberōrūm	libērīs	libērās	libērāe	libērīs

¹ The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45, 1.

Aeger, sick..

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aegr̄ēr	aegr̄ā	aegr̄ūm
<i>Gen.</i>	aegr̄ī	aegr̄ae	aegr̄ī
<i>Dat.</i>	aegr̄ō	aegr̄ae	aegr̄ō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegr̄ām	aegr̄ām	aegr̄ūm
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegr̄ā	aegr̄ūm
<i>Abl.</i>	aegr̄ō	aegr̄ā	aegr̄ō ;

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	aegr̄ī	aegr̄ae	aegr̄ā
<i>Gen.</i>	aegr̄ōrūm	aegr̄ārūm	aegr̄ōrūm
<i>Dat.</i>	aegr̄īs	aegr̄īs	aegr̄īs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegr̄ōs	aegr̄ās	aegr̄ā
<i>Voc.</i>	aegr̄ī	aegr̄ae	aegr̄ā
<i>Abl.</i>	aegr̄īs	aegr̄īs	aegr̄īs.

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Dec. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Dec. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Dec. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45, 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45, 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.*¹ Cic. Vērae āmicītiae, *true friendships.* Cic. Māgister optimus, *the best teacher.* Cic.

¹ Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like **BONUS**: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Vērae āmīcītiae, *True friendships.*

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *ver* (41, 148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominate Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: “An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENER-
DER, NUMBER, and CASE.”

EXERCISE XII.

I. • Vocabulary.

Annūlūs, ī, m.	ring.
Aureūs, ā, ūm, ¹	golden.
Beātūs, ā, ūm,	happy, blessed.
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.
Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm,	distinguished.
Fidūs, ā, ūm,	faithful.
Grātūs, ā, ūm,	acceptable, pleasing.
Magnūs, ā, ūm,	great.
Multūs, ā, ūm,	much, many.
Puellā, ae, f.	girl.
Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,	beautiful.
Rēginā, ae, f.	queen.
Rēgnūm, ī, n.	kingdom.
Vērūs, ā, ūm,	true.
Vitā, ae, f.	life.

¹ The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcus fidus.¹
2. Amīci fidi.
3. Amīco fido.
4. Amīcum fidum.
5. Amīce fide.
6. Amicōrum fidōrum.
7. Amīcis fidis.
8. Amicos fidos.
9. Corōnă aureā.
10. Corōnae aureae.
11. Corōnam auream.
12. Corōnā aureā.
13. Coronārum aureārum.
14. Corōnis aureis.
15. Corōnas aureas.
16. Donum gratum.
17. Doni grati.
18. Dono grato.
19. Dona grata.
20. Donōrum gratōrum.
21. Donis gratis.
22. Ager pulcher.
23. Puellā pulchrā.
24. Donum pulchrum.
25. Agri pulchri.
26. Puellae pulchrae.
27. Dona pulchra.
28. Beātā vitā.
29. Aureus annūlus.
30. Aurei annūli.
31. Magnā gloriā.
32. Egregiā victoriā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true² friend.
2. The true² friends.
3. For a true friend.
4. For true friends.
5. Of the true friend.
6. Of true friends.
7. True glory.
8. With true glory.
9. Of true glory.
10. An acceptable word.
11. Acceptable words.
12. With acceptable words.
13. Of acceptable words.
14. A beautiful book.
15. The beautiful books.
16. With a beautiful book.
17. Of beautiful books.
18. The beautiful queen.
19. The crown of the beautiful queen.
20. The beautiful crown of the queen.
21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom.
22. The brothers of the good king.

¹ In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

² Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms,—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms,—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form,—the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
er,	is,	e.

They are declined as follows :

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> acér	acrís	acrē
<i>G.</i> acrís	acrís	acrís
<i>D.</i> acrī	acrī	acrī
<i>A.</i> acrēm	acrēm	acrē
<i>V.</i> acér	acrís	acrē
<i>A.</i> acrī	acrī	acrī;

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acrīā
<i>G.</i> acrīm	acrīm	acrīm
<i>D.</i> acrībūs	acrībūs	acrībūs
<i>A.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acrīā
<i>V.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acrīā
<i>A.</i> acrībūs	acrībūs	acrībūs.

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.
1. is	e, for positives.
2. ior (or)	ius (us), for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, sad.		Tristior, more sad. ¹	
SINGULAR.			
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> tristis	tristē	<i>N.</i> tristiör	tristiüs
<i>G.</i> tristis	tristis	<i>G.</i> tristiör̄is	tristiör̄is
<i>D.</i> tristi	tristi	<i>D.</i> tristiör̄i	tristiör̄i
<i>A.</i> tristēm	tristē	<i>A.</i> tristiör̄em	tristiüs
<i>V.</i> tristis	tristē	<i>V.</i> tristiör	tristiüs
<i>A.</i> tristi	tristi;	<i>A.</i> tristiör̄e (I)	tristiör̄e (I);
PLURAL.			
<i>N.</i> tristēs	tristiä	<i>N.</i> tristiör̄es	tristiör̄ä
<i>G.</i> tristiüm	tristiüm	<i>G.</i> tristiör̄üm	tristiör̄üm
<i>D.</i> tristiibüs	tristiibüs	<i>D.</i> tristiör̄ibüs	tristiör̄ibüs
<i>A.</i> tristēs	tristiä	<i>A.</i> tristiör̄es	tristiör̄ä
<i>V.</i> tristēs	tristiä	<i>V.</i> tristiör̄es	tristiör̄ä
<i>A.</i> tristiibüs	tristiibüs.	<i>A.</i> tristiör̄ibüs	tristiör̄ibüs.

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING. — All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

<i>Félix, happy.</i>		<i>Prudens, prudent.</i>	
SINGULAR.			
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>N.</i> <i>prudens</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>felicitas</i>	<i>felicitas</i>	<i>G.</i> <i>prudentia</i>	<i>prudentia</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>felicit</i>	<i>felicit</i>	<i>D.</i> <i>prudentia</i>	<i>prudentia</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>felicem</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>A.</i> <i>prudentem</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>V.</i> <i>prudens</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>felicē</i> (1)	<i>felicē</i> (1);	<i>A.</i> <i>prudentē</i> (1)	<i>prudentē</i> (1);

¹ Comparative. See 160.

PLURAL.

<i>N. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>	<i>N. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>G. felicitūm</i>	<i>felicitūm</i>	<i>G. prudentiūm</i>	<i>prudentiūm</i>
<i>D. felicitibūs</i>	<i>felicitibūs</i>	<i>D. prudentibūs</i>	<i>prudentibūs</i>
<i>A. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>	<i>A. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>V. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>	<i>V. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>A. felicitibūs</i>	<i>felicitibūs.</i>	<i>A. prudentibūs</i>	<i>prudentibūs.</i>

EXERCISE XIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Acér, ácris, ácrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Anímāl, ánimālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>animal.</i>
Brěvís, é,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crüdēlis, é,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dölör, döloris, <i>m.</i>	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dúcis, <i>m.</i>	<i>leader.</i>
Fertilis, é,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortis, é,	<i>brave.</i>
Návalis, é,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnis, é,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
Säpiens, sápientis,	<i>wise.</i>
Singūlaris, é,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilis, é,	<i>useful.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolores acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acribus. 5. Hostis crudelis. 6. Hostem crudelēm. 7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis¹ fortis. 9. Virtute militum¹ fortium. 10. Ager fertilis. 11. In agro fertili. 12. Agros fertiles. 13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navales. 16. Post pugnas navales. 17. Singuläris virtus. 18. Singulāri virtute. 19. Omne animal. 20. Omnia animalia.

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen.
2. Of useful citizens.
3. For a useful citizen.
4. For useful citizens.
5. Of a useful citizen.
6. The wise judge.
7. Wise judges.
8. For the wise judge.
9. For wise judges.
10. Brave soldiers.
11. For brave soldiers.
12. A brave soldier.
13. Of the brave soldier.
14. The brave leader.
15. Brave leaders.
16. The word of the brave leader.
17. By the words of the brave leader.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,¹ high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison* — by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison* — by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.

¹ Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 152: *altior*, *altius*; *altioris*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

*Altus, altior, altissimus: high, higher, highest.
levis, levior, levissimus: light, lighter, lightest.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxime*, most, to the positive:

*Arduus, māgis arduus, maxime arduus.
Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clāriōr, A more renowned orator.

Clarior is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*, which is of the First and Second Declensions (148). Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clār*; Comparative, *clāriōr*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (152). Singular: N. *clarior*, *clarius*; G. *clarioris*, *clarioris*, etc.¹ It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātōr*, according to Rule XXXIII.²

EXERCISE XIV.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Altūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>high, lofty.</i>
<i>Clārūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
<i>Intēr, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
<i>Mons, montīs, m.</i>	<i>mountain.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. *Orātōr clarus.* 2. *Orātōr clarior.*³ 3. *Orātōr clarissimus.* 4. *Oratōres clari.* 5. *Oratōres clariōres.*³ 6. *Or-*

¹ Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

² Give the Rule.

³ Declined like *tristior*, 152. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

tōres clarissimi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Bea-tissima vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissima. 16. Milites fortissimi. 17. Liber utlīlis. 18. Libri utlīores. 19. Libris utilissi-mis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiores.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: ¹*ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: ¹*prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: ¹*singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. <i>ūnūs</i> , <i>unā</i> , <i>unūm</i> ,	<i>prīmūs</i> , <i>first</i> ,	<i>singūli</i> , <i>one by one</i> .
2. <i>duō</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duō</i> ,	<i>sēcundūs</i> , <i>second</i> ,	<i>bīni</i> , <i>two by two</i> .
3. <i>trēs</i> , <i>triā</i> ,	<i>tertiūs</i> , <i>third</i> ,	<i>ternī</i> (<i>trīni</i>).
4. <i>quattuōr</i> ,	<i>quartūs</i> , <i>fourth</i> ,	<i>quāternī</i> .
5. <i>quinquē</i> ,	<i>quintūs</i> , <i>fifth</i> ,	<i>quinī</i> .
6. <i>sex</i> ,	<i>sextūs</i> ,	<i>senī</i> .

¹ Cardinals denote simply the number of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. Ordinals denote the place of an object in a series: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*.

7. septěm,	septěmūs,	septěnī.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōnī.
9. nōvěm,	nōnūs,	nōvēnī.
10. dēcěm,	dēcimūs,	dēnī.
11. unděcěm,	unděcimūs,	unděnī.
12. duōděcěm,	duōděcimūs,	duōdēnī.
13. trēděcěm, or děcěm ēt trēs,	tertiūs děcimūs,	ternī dēnī.
20. vigintī,	vicēsímūs,	vicēnī.
21. { vigintī ūnūs, } ūnūs ēt vigintī,	vicēsímūs primūs, ūnūs ēt vicēsímūs,	vicēni singūlī. singūlī ēt vicēnī
30. trigintā,	tricēsímūs,	tricēnī.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsímūs,	quadrāgēnī.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsímūs,	quinquāgēnī.
100. centūm,	centēsímūs,	centēnī.
200. dūcentī, ae, s,	dūcentēsímūs,	dūcēnī.
1000. millē,	millēsímūs,	singūlā milliū.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. *Cardinals.*

175. On the declension of cardinals, observe,

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum*, are indeclinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.¹
4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.²

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

1. *Unus, one.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>N.</i> ūnūs,	ūnă,	ūnūm,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūnă,
<i>G.</i> unīūs,	uniūs,	uniūt,	unōrūm,	unārūm,	unōrūm,
<i>D.</i> unī,	unī,	unī,	unīs,	unis,	unīs,
<i>A.</i> unūm,	unām,	unūm,	unos,	unās,	unā,
<i>V.</i> uně,	ună,	unūm,			
<i>A.</i> uno,	unā,	uno;	unīs,	unis,	unīs.

second. *Distributives* denote the number of objects taken at a time: *singūlī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two.

¹ These are declined like the plural of *bonus* (148); *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*, two hundred.

² Though only in the plural, and only when used substantively. It is then declined like the plural of *mare* (50); *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

2. *Duo, two.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>duō,</i>	<i>duae,</i>	<i>duō,</i>	<i>trēs, m. and f.</i>	<i>triā, n.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>duōrūm,</i>	<i>duārūm,</i>	<i>duorūm,</i>	<i>trītūm,</i>	<i>triūm,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>duōbūs,</i>	<i>duābūs,</i>	<i>duōbūs,</i>	<i>trībūs,</i>	<i>trībūs,</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>duōs, duō,</i>	<i>duās,</i>	<i>duō,</i>	<i>trēs,</i>	<i>triā,</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>duōbūs,</i>	<i>duābūs,</i>	<i>duōbūs,</i>	<i>trībūs,</i>	<i>trībūs.</i>

3. *Tres, three.*

EXERCISE XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Annūs, i, m.</i>	<i>year.</i>
<i>Classis, classis, f.</i>	<i>fleet.</i>
<i>Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.</i>	<i>fortitude, bravery.</i>
<i>Impérium, ii, n.</i>	<i>reign, power.</i>
<i>Nāvis, nāvis, f.</i>	<i>ship.</i>
<i>Proelium, ii, n.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
<i>Vir, viri, m.</i>	<i>man, hero.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Urus*¹ liber. 2. *Duo*¹ libri. 3. *Liber primus*¹. 4. *Liber secundus.* 5. *Tres libri.* 6. *Tertius liber.* 7. *Tria bella.* 8. *Post tria bella.* 9. *Post tertium bellum.* 10. *Ante quartum bellum.* 11. *Quattuor*² *anni.* 12. *Post bellum quinque annorum.* 13. *Decem*² *dies.* 14. *Decimus dies.*³ 15. *Decem horae.* 16. *Decima hora.* 17. *Decem proelia.* 18. *Decimum proelium.* 19. *Horā diei decimā.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

¹ Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

² The indeclinable numeral adjectives (175, 2) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender, and in any case.

³ *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally *masculine*.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ēgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ēgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> <i>ēgō</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>G.</i> <i>mei</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>mīhi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibī</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>A.</i> <i>mē;</i>	<i>tē;</i>	<i>sē;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>G.</i> <i>nostrūm</i> }	<i>vestrūm</i> }	<i>sui</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>nostri</i> }	<i>vestri</i> }	
<i>A.</i> <i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibī</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>nōbis.</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sē.</i>

1. **Substantive Pronouns.**—Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.**—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

<i>meus, my,</i>	<i>noster, our.</i>
<i>tuus, thy, your,</i>	<i>vester, your.</i>
<i>suus, his, her, its,</i>	<i>suus, their.</i>

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions;¹ *meus, mea, meum*; *nōster, nostra, nostrum*: but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem.

They are declined as follows:

Hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G. hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>	<i>hārūm</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>
<i>D. huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
<i>A. hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A. hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc;</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>his.</i>

Illō, he or that.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. illē</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illād</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illā</i>
<i>G. illiūs</i>	<i>illiūs</i>	<i>illiūs</i>	<i>illōrūm</i>	<i>illārūm</i>	<i>illōrūm</i>
<i>D. illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>A. illūm</i>	<i>illām</i>	<i>illād</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illā</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A. illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō;</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis.</i>

¹ See *bonus* and *aeger*, 148.

Istě, *that.*

Istě, *that*, is declined like illě. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

Ipsě, *self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ipsě	ipsā	ipsūm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
G. ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrūm	ipsārūm	ipsōrūm
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
A. ipsūm	ipsām	ipsūm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
V.					
A. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

Is, *he, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is	eā	íd	ii	eae	eā
G. ejūs	ejūs	ejūs	eōrūm	eārūm	eōrūm
D. eī	eī	eī	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis)
A. eūm	eām	íd	eōs	cās	eā
V.					
A. eō	eā	eō;	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis).

Idem, *the same.*

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dēm*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idem*, and *iddem* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dēm*; thus:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. iděm	eáděm	íděm	iděm	eaeděm	eáděm
G. ejusděm	ejusděm	ejusděm	eōrunděm	eārunděm	eōrunděm
D. eiděm	eiděm	eiděm	iisděm	iisděm	iisděm
A. eunděm	eanděm	íděm	eōsděm	eāsděm	eáděm
V.					
A. eōděm	eáděm	eōděm;	iisděm	iisděm	iisděm.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quodrum</i>	<i>quodrum</i>	<i>quodrum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō;</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus.</i>

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

Quis (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> quis	quae	quid	qui	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	qui bus	qui bus	qui bus
<i>A.</i> quēm	quām	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> quō	quā	quō;	qui bus	qui bus	qui bus .

Qui (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the relative *qui*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.¹

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites:*

<i>aliquis,</i>	<i>aliqua,</i>	<i>aliquid</i>	<i>or aliquod,</i>	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quispiam,</i>	<i>quaepiam,</i>	<i>quidpiam</i>	<i>or quodpiam,</i>	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quidam,</i>	<i>quaedam,</i>	<i>quiddam</i>	<i>or quoddam,</i>	<i>certain, certain one.</i>
<i>quisquam,</i>		<i>quidquam,</i>		<i>any one.</i>

¹ But after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and the Neuter Plural have *qua* or *qua*; *si quae*, *si qua*. In like manner, *aliquis* has *aliqua* in the Feminine Singular and in the Neuter Plural.

II. *The General Indefinites:*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, *every, every one.*
 quivis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, *any one you please.*
 quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet, *any one you please.*

EXERCISE XVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Consiliūm, ī, n.	<i>design, plan.</i>
Epistōlā, ae, f.	<i>letter.</i>
Ex, prep. with abl.	<i>from.</i>
Insūlā, ae, f.	<i>island.</i>
Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.	<i>parent.</i>
Pars, partis, f.	<i>part, portion.</i>
Pātriā, ae, f.	<i>country, native country.</i>
Praeclārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished.</i>
Prātūm, ī, n.	<i>meadow.</i>
Prō, prep. with abl.	<i>for, in behalf of.</i>
Quivis, quaevis, quodvis,	<i>whoever, whatever.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi.
2. Ad me,¹ ad te.
3. Contra nos, contra se.
4. Ante vos, ante nos.
5. Pro vobis.¹
6. Meā² vitā.
7. Patriā tuā.
8. Pro patriā tuā.²
9. Contra patriam tuam.
10. Nostra consilia.
11. Nostris² consiliis.
12. Vestri patres.
13. In nostrā patriā.
14. Hic² puer, hi puéri.
15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae.
16. Hoc donum, haec dona.
17. Haec urbs praeclārā.
18. Ex hac vitā.
19. Illius libri.
20. In eā pugnā.
21. In eōdem prato.
22. Quae² urbs?

¹ See 184, 1. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules. See Rule XXXII. 432. Other pronouns are sometimes used as nouns, and parsed in the same way.

² The Possessive, the Demonstrative, and the Interrogative pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 32. Hence *meā* is in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with *vitā*; *nostris*, in the Dative or Ablative Plural Neuter, to agree with *consiliis*; *hic*, in the Nominative Singular Masculine, to agree with *puer*.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We, you.
2. You, me, himself.
3. For you, for me, for himself.
4. Of himself, of you.
5. Against you, against me.
6. My book, your book, his book.
7. My books, your books, his books.
8. Our parents, your parents, their parents.
9. This letter, that letter.
10. These letters, those letters.
11. This city, that city.
12. These cities, those cities.
13. After that victory.
14. The same words.
15. With the same words.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lēgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,— which admit a direct object of their action: *servum¹ verbērat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,— which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:²

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,— which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pāter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

² Voice shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amatur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. Moods.

196. Moods¹ are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The Definite or Finite Moods make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The INDICATIVE Mood,—which either asserts something as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lēgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE Mood,—which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lēgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lēge*, read thou.

II. The Indefinite Moods express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. The INFINITIVE,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *legere*, to read.

2. The GERUND,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The SUPINE,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The PARTICIPLE,—which, like the English Participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

¹ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future, — *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love: and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future, — *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:¹

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.** — The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have (have loved)*, and is called the *Present Perfect*, or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect*, or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical.** — Tenses are also distinguished as
1) *Principal*: — Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*: — Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.** — The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two Numbers:² SINGULAR and PLURAL.

¹ *Tense* means *time*, and is employed to designate the *time* of an action or event.

² *Number* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to number in nouns. See 37.

V. PERSONS.

200. There are three Persons:¹ FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ēre,	īre.

202. Principal Parts.—Four forms of the verb—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine²—are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. Entire Conjugation.—In any regular verb,

1. The VERB-STEM may be found by dropping the Infinitive Ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.
2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.³

¹ Person in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to person in nouns. See 37.

² In the Active Voice, all these four forms are usually given as Principal Parts; but, in the Passive, only the first three.

³ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am.*

Sum is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sūm,	essē,	fūi,	—. ¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.

sūm,	<i>I am,</i>	sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art;</i>	estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
est,	<i>he is;</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>	ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>	erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was;</i>	erānt,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

ērō,	<i>I shall be,</i>	ērīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erīs,	<i>thou will be,</i>	erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erīt,	<i>he will be;</i>	erūnt,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i>	fuīmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuīstī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuītīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been;</i>	fuērunt,	<i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been;</i>	fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou will have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ The Supine is wanting in this verb.

² Or, *you are*: *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse: in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be.*¹

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
sím,	<i>I may be,</i>	símüs,
síſ,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	síſüs,
sít,	<i>he may be;</i>	sint,

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be.

essěm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essěmüs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essěs,	<i>thou mightest be,</i>	essětüs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essět,	<i>he might be;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have been.

fuěřim,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuěřimüs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuěřis,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuěřiſüs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuěřit,	<i>he may have been;</i>	fuěrint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been.

fuissěm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissěmüs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissěs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissětüs,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissět,	<i>he might have been;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ěs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estě,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> ²	estotě,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essě,	<i>to be.</i>		
PERF. fuissě,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. fütürüs ³	<i>essě, to be about to be.</i>	FUT. fütürüs ³	<i>about to be.</i>

¹ The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: *sit, he may be, may he be, let him be.*

² The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: *esto, thou shalt be, or be thou; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.*

³ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*; N. *futūrus, a, um, G. futūri, ae, i*; so in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite¹ Verb agrees with its Subject² in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificavit;³ God made the world. Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tȳrannos intrōducits, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

Thebāni accusāti sunt;⁴ The Thebans were accused. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted—

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipūlos mōneō,⁵ ut stūdia āment,⁶ I instruct pupils to love⁶ their studies. Quint.

¹ See 196, I.

² With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing, one or more) who performs the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who receives the action, i.e. is acted upon, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

³ *Aedificavit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *introducits* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

⁴ The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

⁵ The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *I*.

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, *they*, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

⁶ *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (203).
2. Give the Principal Parts (202), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.¹
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

*Nōs*² ērāmūs, *We were.*

Erāmūs is an intransitive irregular³ verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, ——⁴. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmūs, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmūs* is found in the *Indicative mood, Imperfect tense, First person, Plural number*, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: “A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON.”

2. *Sum without Subject.*⁵

Fui, I have been.

Fui is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti,*

¹ That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

² *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

³ Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

⁴ The *Supine* is wanting.

⁵ That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative mood*, *Perfect tense*, *First person*, *Singular number*, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied¹ in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

EXERCISE XVII.

I. Translate into English.

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.²
2. Es, est, estis.
3. Eram, erāmus.²
4. Erat, erant.
5. Eris, erītis.²
6. Erit, erunt.
7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro.
8. Fuīmus, fuerāmus, fuerīmus.
9. Fuisti, fuistis.
10. Fuit, fuērunt.
11. Fuērat, fuērant.
12. Fuērit, fuērint.
13. Sim, simus.
14. Sit, sint.
15. Essem, essēmus.
16. Esset, essent.
17. Fuērim, fuisse.
18. Fuerīmus, fuissēmus.
19. Fuērit, fuērint.
20. Fuisse.
21. Es, este.

II. Translate into Latin.

1. He³ is, they³ are.
2. He has been, they have been.
3. He will be, they will be.
4. He was, they were.
5. He will have been, they will have been.
6. He had been, they had been.
7. I³ was, you were.
8. We have been, you have been.
9. You may be, they may be.
10. He would be, they would be.
11. I might have been, we might have been.

¹ See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

² In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

³ The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite¹ Verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius² regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vicit, The king conquered. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vicit, The king conquered.

Rex is a noun (31) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class I., as it has a nominative ending *s* (*x* = *g-s*, of which *s* is the ending, as *g* belongs to the *stem*. See 50, I. note); STEM, *reg.* Singular: *rex, regis, regi, regem, rex, rege.* Plural: *reges, regum, regibus, reges, reges, regibus.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 35, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III.: “The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative.”

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cătō, Cătōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
Crūdūs, <i>ă, ūm,</i>	<i>unripe.</i>
Diligens, Diligentīs,	<i>diligent.</i>
Discipūlūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>pupil.</i>

¹ See 196, I.

² In these examples, the subjects are *Servius, portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ae, f.	<i>Germany.</i>
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm.	<i>pleasant, delightful.</i>
Laudābilis, č.	<i>praiseworthy, laudable.</i>
Mūtūrūs, ā, ūm.	<i>ripe.</i>
Pōmūm, i, n.	<i>fruit.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Pax¹ jucunda² est.³ 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis⁴ fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērant. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.⁵ 2. The pupils were diligent.
3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful.
11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

¹ *Pax* is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

² *Jucunda* is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 32.

³ *Est* is a verb in the *Indicative* mood, *Present* tense, *Third* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

⁴ *Utilis* agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

⁵ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun¹ denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,¹ I am a messenger. Liv. *Servius rex est dēclarātūs, Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, I am a messenger.

Nuntius is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *nunti*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntiū*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii*, *nuntiōrum* *nuntiis*, *nuntios*, *nuntii*, *nuntiis*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 45; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: “A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE.”

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiades accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word,—either an interrogative pronoun,

¹ Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

- 1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.
- 2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing?
- 3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

EXERCISE XIX.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Ancūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>Ancus</i> , Roman king.
<i>Condītōr</i> , condītōris, m.	<i>founder</i> .
<i>Dēmosthēnēs</i> , īs, m.	<i>Demosthenes</i> , Athenian orator.
<i>Ebriētās</i> , ēbriētātis, f.	<i>drunkenness</i> .
<i>Graecūs</i> , ī, ūm,	<i>Greek</i> , <i>Grecian</i> .
<i>Graecus</i> , ī, m.	<i>Greek</i> , <i>a Greek</i> .
<i>Insāniā</i> , ae, f.	<i>insanity</i> , <i>madness</i> .
<i>Inventōr</i> , inventōris, m.	<i>inventor</i> .
<i>Mātēr</i> , mātris, f.	<i>mother</i> .
<i>Mundūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>world</i> , <i>universe</i> .
<i>Nonnē</i> , <i>interrog. part.</i>	expects answer <i>yes</i> .
<i>Nūm</i> , <i>interrog. part.</i>	expects answer <i>no</i> .
<i>Philōsophiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>philosophy</i> .
<i>Rōmā</i> , ae, f.	<i>Rome</i> .
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , ī, ūm,	<i>Roman</i> .
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>Roman</i> , <i>a Roman</i> .
<i>Rōmūlūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>Romulus</i> , the founder of Roma.
<i>Scipiō</i> , Scipiōnis, m.	<i>Scipio</i> , Roman general.

II. Translate into English.^{1*}

1. *Ancus*² fuit³ rex⁴. 2. *Nonne*⁵ *Romūlus* rex fuērat?
3. *Romūlus* rex fuērat. 4. *Quis condītōr Romae*⁶ fuit?
5. *Romūlus* condītōr Romae fuit. 6. *Ebriētas* est insania.
7. *Patria*⁷ est parens omnium nostrum.⁸ 8. *Graeci*⁹ multā rum artium⁸ inventōres erant. 9. *Demosthēnes* orātōr fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.
 12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicēro clarissimus⁹
 orātor fuit. 14. Cantus lusciniae jucundissimus⁹ est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who¹⁰ was the king? ¹¹ 2. Was not¹² Romulus king? ¹¹
 3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the
 Romans? 5. Was not¹² Scipio the leader of the Romans?
 6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother
 is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys
 will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² See Rule III. page 57.

³ See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

⁴ *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in case, according to Rule I. page 59.

⁵ See 346, II. 1 above.

⁶ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 22.

⁷ In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

⁸ *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

⁹ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

¹⁰ See 188.

¹¹ See Rule I.

¹² *Nonne.* See 346 II. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
āmō,	āmārē,	āmāvī,	āmātūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

āmō,	<i>I love,</i>	āmāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
āmās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>	āmātīs,	<i>you love,</i>
āmāt,	<i>he loves;</i>	āmānt,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

āmābām,	<i>I was loving,</i>	āmābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
āmābās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	āmābātīs,	<i>you were loving,</i>
āmābāt,	<i>he was loving;</i>	āmābānt,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

āmābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	āmābīmūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
āmābīs,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	āmābītīs,	<i>you will love,</i>
āmābīt,	<i>he will love;</i>	āmābīnt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

āmāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	āmāvīmūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
āmāvīstī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	āmāvīstīs,	<i>you have loved,</i>
āmāvīt,	<i>he has loved;</i>	āmāvīrānt,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

āmāvērām,	<i>I had loved,</i>	āmāvērāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
āmāvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	āmāvērātīs,	<i>you had loved,</i>
āmāvērāt,	<i>he had loved;</i>	āmāvērānt,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have loved.

āmāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	āmāvērītīs;	<i>you will have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he will have loved;</i>	āmāvērīnt,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can love.

SINGULAR.

āmēm,	<i>I may love,</i>	āmēmūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
āmēs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>	āmētīs,	<i>you may love,</i>
āmēt,	<i>he may love;</i>	āment,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should love.

āmārēm,	<i>I might love,</i>	āmārēmūs,	<i>we might love,</i>
āmārēs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	āmārētīs,	<i>you might love,</i>
āmārēt,	<i>he might love;</i>	āmārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have loved.

āmāvērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	āmāvērimūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
āmāvēris,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	āmāvēritīs,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
āmāvērit,	<i>he may have loved;</i>	āmāvērint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have loved.

āmāvissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	āmāvissēmūs,	<i>we might have</i>
āmāvissēs,	<i>thou mightst have</i>	āmāvissētīs,	<i>loved,</i>
	<i>loved,</i>	āmāvissētīs,	<i>you might have loved,</i>

āmāvissēt,	<i>he might have loved;</i>	āmāvissētīs,	<i>they might have loved.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------	-------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āma,	<i>love thou;</i>	āmatē,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUT. āmatō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	āmatōtē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
āmatō,	<i>he shall love;</i>	āmantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. āmārē,	<i>to love.</i>	PRES. āmans, ²	<i>loving.</i>
PERF. āmāvissē,	<i>to have loved.</i>		
FUT. āmātūrūs ¹ essē,	<i>to be about to love.</i>	FUT. āmātūrūs ¹	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. āmandī,	<i>of loving,</i>	Acc. āmātūm,	<i>to love,</i>
Dat. āmandō,	<i>for loving,</i>	Abl. āmātūn,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>
Acc. āmandūm,	<i>loving,</i>		
Abl. āmandō,	<i>by loving.</i>		

¹ Decline like *bonus*, 148.² Decline like *prudens*, 153.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
āmōr,Pres. Inf.
āmārī,Perf. Ind.
āmātūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

āmōr
āmārīs, or rō
āmātūr;

PLURAL.

āmāmūr
āmāmīmī
āmantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.*āmābār
āmābārīs, or rō
āmābātūr;āmābāmūr
āmābāmīmī
āmābāntūr.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be loved.*āmābōr
āmābērīs, or rō
āmābitūr;āmābīmūr
āmābīmīmī
āmābūntūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was loved.*āmātūs sūm¹
āmātūs ēs
āmātūs est;āmātī sūmūs
āmātī estīs
āmātī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*āmātūs ērām¹
āmātūs ērās
āmātūs ērāt;āmātī ērāmūs
āmātī ērātīs
āmātī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*āmātūs ērō¹
āmātūs ērīs
āmātūs ērīt;āmātī ērīmūs
āmātī ērītīs
āmātī ērūnt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*; thus *amātūs fui* for *amātūs sum*. So *fuēram, fuēras, etc.*, for *ēram, ēras, etc.*; also *fuēro, fuēris, etc.*, for *ēro, ēris, etc.*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be loved.

SINGULAR.

ămĕr
ămĕrīs, or rĕ
ămĕtūr;

PLURAL.

ămĕmĕr
ămĕmīnī
ămentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be loved.

ămărĕr
ămărĕrīs, or rĕ
ămărĕtūr;

ămărĕmĕr
ămărĕmīnī
ămărentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămătūs sīm¹
ămătūs sis
ămătūs sit;

ămătī sīmūs
ămătī sītīs
ămătī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been loved.

ămătūs essĕm¹
ămătūs essĕs
ămătūs essĕt;

ămătī essĕmūs
ămătī essĕtīs
ămătī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămărĕ, *be thou loved;* | ămămīnī, *be ye loved.*FUT. ămătōr, *thou shalt be loved;* | ămantōr, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămărī, *to be loved.*PERF. ămătūs essĕ, *to have been loved.* | PERF. ămătūs, *having been loved.*FUT. ămătūm īrī, *to be about to be loved.* | FUT. ămandūs, *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

¹ *Fuērim, fuēris, etc., are sometimes used for sim, sis, etc. So also fuisse, fuisse, etc., for essem, esses, etc.*

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vōs laudāvist̄s, *You have praised.*

Laudavist̄s is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *laud.* Principal Parts: *laudo*, *laudāre*, *laudāvi*, *laudātum.* Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi*, *laudavisti*, *laudāvit*, *laudavimus*, *laudavist̄s*, *laudavērunt*, or *laudavēre.* The form *laudavist̄s* is found in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Second person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvist̄s, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavist̄s*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *ist̄s*; while *laudavist̄s*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>
Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.¹
2. Amas, amābas, amābis.
3. Amat, amant.¹
4. Amābat, amābant.
5. Amābit, amā-

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are alike, and in what they are unlike. Thus *amo*, *amābam*, *amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.¹ 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvit, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabēris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

(the stem, 203) in common; but they differ from each other in the endings,—*o*, *ābam*, *ābo*. In the forms *amat*, *amant*, there is a still closer resemblance: not only is the stem *am* common to both, but the endings have the letters *at* in common; or, in other words, the plural ending *ant* differs from the singular ending *at* only in inserting *n*: **AT, ANT.**

¹ Hero the pupil will observe that the plural ending *ābunt* differs from the singular ending *ābit*, not only in inserting *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: **ABIT, ABUNT.**

5. Amabitur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabīmur. 7. Amātus¹ sum, amātūs eram, amātūs ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti¹ sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

¹ The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender, number, and case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION—BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. *Laudo, laudor.*¹ 2. *Laudabo, laudabor.*² 3. *Laudābam, laudābar.*³ 4. *Laudem, lauder.* 5. *Laudārem, laudārer.*² 6. *Laudat, laudatur.*¹ 7. *Amābat, amabātur.* 8. *Amābit, amabītur.* 9. *Amet, amētur.* 10. *Amāret, amarētur.* 11. *Laudārent, laudarentur.* 12. *Ament, amentur.* 13. *Laudant, laudantur.* 14. *Amābant, amabantur.* 15. *Laudābunt, laudabuntur.* 16. *Amāvit, amātus est.* 17. *Laudavērat, laudātus erat.* 18. *Amavērit, amātus erit.* 19. *Lauda, laudāre.* 20. *Amāto, amātor.* 21. *Laudanto, laudantor.*

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices,—the Active and the Passive,—and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

² Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings,—in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudabor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.¹ DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

379. The Direct Object² of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*³ Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

¹ It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (42, 45). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

² The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *salūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example,—*made the world*.

³ In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *defendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deūs mundūm aedificāvit, God made the world.

Mundum is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *mund*. Singular: *mundus, mundi, mundo, mundum, monde, mundo*. Plural: *mundi, mundōrum, mundis, mundos, mundi, mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 45; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: “The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative.”

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Aedificō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to build.</i>
Arō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to plough.</i>
Cantō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Italiā, ae, f.	<i>Italy.</i>
Libērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to liberate.</i>
Rēnōvō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to renew.</i>
Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to hope.</i>
Tarquiniūs, ii, m.	<i>Tarquinius, Roman king.</i>
Thēmistōclēs, is, m.	<i>Themistocles, Athenian commander.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lusciniam laudo.¹
2. Lusciniam laudāmus.
3. Luscinias laudat.
4. Luscinias laudant.
5. Luscinia laudātur.
6. Lusciniae laudantur.
7. Patriam amāmus.
8. Pro patriā² pugnabimus.
9. Nonne³ Themistōcles patriam liberāvit?
10. Patriam liberāvit.
11. Italiam libēravērunt.
12. Italia liberāta⁴ est.
13. Tarquinius templum aedificā-

¹ *Lusciniam* is the *Direct Object* of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

² See Rule XXXII. page 24.

³ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

⁴ For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Templa aedificavčrant. 16. Templa aedificāta erant. 17. Templum aedificātum erit. 18. Pučrum laudabāmus. 19. Pučri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne¹ bellum renovātum est?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The nightingale is singing.
2. The nightingales are singing.
3. The nightingales will sing.
4. The boys have been praised.
5. Did you not¹ praise the boys?²
6. We praised the boys.
7. The boys will be praised.
8. Have we not¹ liberated Italy?
9. You have liberated Italy.
10. We will liberate the country.
11. We were ploughing the field.
12. Will you plough the field?
13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.³

ADVERBS.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs⁴ qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes fēliciter⁴ vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Fācile⁴ doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud⁴ aliter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

³ The pupil should now review the Third Declension (48–54).

⁴ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, *happily*, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, *live* (*live happily*). *Facile*, *easily*, *unquestionably*, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, *the most learned* (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* *the most learned*). *Haud*, *not*, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, *otherwise* (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs fēlicitēr vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

Feliciter is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI.: “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Elōquentiā, ae, f.	eloquence.
Expugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to take, take by storm.
Fortitēr, adv.	bravely.
Jūventūs, jūventūtis, f.	youth.
Ornō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to adorn, be an ornament to.
Piētās, piētātis, f.	filial affection, piety, duty.
Pugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to fight.
Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to preserve, keep, save.
Vōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to fly.

II. Translate into English.

1. Avis volat.
2. Aves volant.
3. Nonne¹ avis cantābat?
4. Aves cantābant.
5. Rex urbem² aedificāvit.
6. Urbs aedificāta³ est.
7. Urbes aedificātae³ erunt.
8. Milites fortiter⁴ pugnāverunt.
9. Scipio⁵ milites laudāvit.
10. Scipio⁵ milītum virtūtem laudābat.
11. Scipiōnem laudāmus.
12. Scipio patrem servāvit.
13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit.
14. Urbs expugnāta est.
15. Milites patriam amant.
16. Milites⁵ pro patriā pugnābant.
17. Piētas puēros ornat.
18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

³ Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

⁴ *Fortiter*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāverunt*, according to Rule LI.

⁵ In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing.
2. Do you not¹ love birds?²
3. We love birds.³
4. This bird will fly.
5. Did you not¹ save the city?
6. The soldiers saved the city.
7. Shepherds love the mountains.
8. We love virtue.
9. Is not virtue loved?
10. It is loved.
11. Do not the citizens praise the king?
12. They praise the king.
13. The king will be praised.
14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.³

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Convōcō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to assemble, call together.</i>
<i>Duplicō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to double, increase.</i>
<i>Dux</i> , dūcīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>general, leader.</i>
<i>Fidēs</i> , fidēi, <i>f.</i>	<i>faith, fidelity, word,⁴ promise.</i>
<i>Fūgō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to rout.</i>
<i>Hōmō</i> , hōmīnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>man.</i>
<i>Sēnātūs</i> , ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>senate.</i>
<i>Stimūlō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to stimulate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Homīnes*⁵ cantum lusciniae⁶ laudant.
2. *Cantus* lusciniae laudātur.
3. *Romūlus* exercītum fugat.
4. Nonne

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² Remember that the object in Latin usually precedes the verb.

³ The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 119).

⁴ To keep one's word, *fidem servāre*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

⁵ In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (51, II.), *mīlites* (50, II.), *stimulāvit* (205)?

⁶ See Rule XVI. page 22.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numērum diērum duplicavi. 12. Numērus diērum duplicatus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.¹
2. Will you not keep your word?
3. We will keep our word.
4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens.
5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised?
6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army?
7. They have praised the fidelity of the army.
8. Did not the general praise the army?
9. He praised the army.
10. The army will be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.²

EXERCISE XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibālis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hannibal, Carthaginian general.</i>
Innocens, innōcentīs,	<i>innocent.</i>
Nobilis, ē,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ā, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicus, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

¹ See note 4, preceding page.

² The pupil should now review Adjectives (146–162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam¹ ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram¹ ampliavērat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta² est. 5. Hannibal multas civitātes occupāvit. 6. Judīces hominēm innocentissimum³ condemnāvērunt. 7. Num Punīcum bellum renovātum est? 8. Nonne Punīcum bellum renovātum est? 9. Punīcum bellum renovātum est. 10. Romāni nobilissimas³ urbes expugnavērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.⁴

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Aliquis, aliquid or aliquod,</i>	<i>some one, somebody.</i>
<i>Delectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,</i>	<i>to delight.</i>
<i>Diligentiā, ae, f.</i>	<i>diligence.</i>
<i>Nōn, adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
<i>Salutō, ārē, āvi, ātūm;</i>	<i>to salute.</i>
<i>Suūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

¹ See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.² Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.³ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.⁴ The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc¹ urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te² salutāvit? 4. Pater meus¹ te salūtat. 5. Haec¹ vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos² delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se² amant. 8. Fratres tui¹ laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos³ amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos³ amat. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

- 1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not⁴ blame you.
- 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother.
- 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us.
- 7. Did not⁵ your father praise you? 8. He praised us.
- 9. Did not⁵ some one praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence.
- 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not⁴ blame me.
- 13. He blamed himself.
- 14. He will be blamed.

¹ These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

² Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

³ The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her*, *its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

⁴ When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, *not*, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

⁵ Nonne.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mõneō,	mõnērē,	mõnuī,	mõnītūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

mõneō

mõnēs

mõnēt;

PLURAL.

mõnēmūs

mõnētīs

mõnēnt.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mõnēbām

mõnēbās

mõnēbāt;

mõnēbāmūs

mõnēbātīs

mõnēbānt.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mõnēbō

mõnēbīs

mõnēbīt;

mõnēbīmūs

mõnēbītīs

mõnēbīnt.

PAST.

I advised or have advised.

mõnuī

mõnuistī

mõnuist;

mõnuīmūs

mõnuistīs

mõnuistunt, or ērō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mõnuērām

mõnuērās

mõnuērāt;

mõnuērāmūs

mõnuērātīs

mõnuērānt.

FUTURE PAST.

I shall or will have advised.

mõnuērō

mõnuērīs

mõnuērīt;

mõnuērīmūs

mõnuērītīs

mõnuērīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

SINGULAR.

mõneām

mõneās

mõneāt;

PLURAL.

mõneāmūs

mõneātīs

mõneant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should advise.

mõnērēm

mõnērēs

mõnērēt;

mõnērēmūs

mõnērētīs

mõnērēnt.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mõnuērīm

mõnuērīs

mõnuērīt;

mõnuērīmūs

mõnuērītīs

mõnuērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

mõnuissēm

mõnuissēs

mõnuissēt;

mõnuissēmūs

mõnuissētīs

mõnuissēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mõnē, advise thou; | mõnētē, advise ye.

FUT. mõnētō, thou shalt advise, | mõnētōtē, ye shall advise,
mõnētō, he shall advise; | mõnentō, they shall advise

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mõnērē, to advise.

PERF. mõnuissē, to have advised.

FUT. mõnítürūs essē, to be
about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mõnems, advising.

FUT. mõnítürūs, about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen. mõnemdi, of advising,

Dat. mõnendō, for advising,

Acc. mõnendūm, advising,

Abl. mõnemdō, by advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. mõnítūm, to advise,

Abl. mõnítū, to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnērī,	mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneōr		mōnēmūr
mōnērīs, or rē		mōnēmīnī
mōnētūr;		mōnēmūtūr.

PLURAL.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mōnēbār		mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbārīs, or rē		mōnēbāmīnī
mōnēbātūr;		mōnēbāmūtūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mōnēbōr		mōnēbīmūr
mōnēbōrīs, or rē		mōnēbīmīnī
mōnēbōtūr;		mōnēbīmūtūr.

PAST.

I have been or was advised.

mōnītūs sūm ¹		mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītūs ēs		mōnītī estīs
mōnītūs est;		mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mōnītūs ērām ¹		mōnītī ērāmūs
mōnītūs ērās		mōnītī ērātīs
mōnītūs erāt;		mōnītī ērānt.

FUTURE PAST.

I shall or will have been advised.

mōnītūs ērō ¹		mōnītī ērīmūs
mōnītūs ērīs		mōnītī ērītīs
mōnītūs ērīt;		mōnītī ērīnt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneār
mōneāris, or rē
mōneātūr;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūr
mōneāmīnī
mōneāntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr
mōnērēris, or rē
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr
mōnērēmīnī
mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sim¹
mōnītūs sis
mōnītūs sit;

mōnītī simūs
mōnītī sitīs
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm¹
mōnītūs essēs
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītī essētīs
mōnītī essēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, *be thou advised*; | mōnēmīnī, *be ye advised*.FUT. mōnētōr, *thou shalt be advised*, |
mōnētōr, *he shall be advised*; | mōnēntōr, *they shall be advised*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnērī, *to be advised*,PERF. mōnītūs essē, *to have been advised*,FUT. mōnītūm irī, *to be about to be advised*.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. mōnītūs, *advised*,FUT. mōnēndūs, *to be advised*.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreō, pārērē, pāruī, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.¹ 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuěram, monuěro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moream, monērem, monučrim, monuissem. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monučrint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyēd, he will have obēyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to sing.*
 Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to hope.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.¹
2. Sperant, parent.
3. Sperāmus, parēmus.
4. Sperābat, parēbat.
5. Sperābant, parēbant.
6. Sperābam, parēbam.
7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus.
8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus.
9. Sperābo, parēbo.
10. Sperāvi, parui.
11. Speravēram, paruēram.
12. Speravēro, paruēro.
13. Speravīmus, paruīmus.
14. Speravērat, paruērat.
15. Speravērint, paruērint.
16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise.
2. I was singing, I was advising.
3. I will sing, I will advise.
4. He will hope, he will obey.
5. They will hope, they will obey.
6. They were singing, they were advising.
7. They sing, they advise.
8. He has hoped, he has obeyed.
9. They have hoped, they have obeyed.
10. He had sung, he had obeyed.
11. They had sung, they had obeyed.
12. We had hoped, we had advised.
13. We would sing, we would obey.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations,—the First and the Second,—and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXX.

I. Vocabulary.

Aurūm, ī, n.	gold.
Flōs, flōrīs, m.	flower.
Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm,	to have, hold.
Měreō, měrērē, měruī, měritūm,	to deserve, merit.
Philōsophūs, ī, m.	philosopher.
Pondūs, pondērīs, n.	weight, mass.
Praebeō, praebērē, praebuī, praebitūm,	to furnish, give.
Praemīum, ii, n.	reward.
Tāceō, tācērē, tācui, tācītūm,	to be silent.
Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm,	to frighten, terrify.

II. Translate into English.

1. Puer librum habet.
2. Puëri libros habent.
3. Libros utiles¹ habëmus.
4. Librum utilem habuisti.
5. Nonne bonum¹ amicum habëbis?
6. Bonum amicum habëbo.
7. Bonos amicos habuimus.
8. Rex amicos habëbat.
9. Rex aurum habëbat.
10. Rex² magnum auri pondus³ habuërat.
11. Gloriam veram habebilitis.
12. Ver praebet flores.
13. Ver præbēbit flores.
14. Philosöphus tacēbat.
15. Discipulus praemium meret.

¹ Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

² In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

³ When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *aurei*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum aurei pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book?
2. I have your book.
3. Which book have you?
4. I have three¹ books.
5. My brother has ten books.
6. The king had a golden crown.
7. Did he not have many friends?
8. He had many friends.
9. You will have true friends.
10. The pupils are silent.²
11. Will you not be silent?
12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor.
2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur.
3. Moneātur, moneantur.
4. Monerētur, monerentur.
5. Monītus est, monīti sunt.
6. Monītus erat, monīti erant.
7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt.
8. Monētor, monentor.
9. Monet, monētur.
10. Monent, monen-
tūr.
11. Monēbat, Monebātur.
12. Monēbant, moneban-
tūr.
13. Monēbit, monebītur.
14. Monēbunt, monebuntur.
15. Monēmus, monēmur.
16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur.
17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised.
2. I was terrified, we were terrified.
3. He will be advised, they will be advised.
4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified.
5. He had been advised, he had been terrified.
6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified.
7. I advise, I am advised.
8. I was advising, I was advised.
9. I shall advise, I shall be advised.
10. They terrify, they are terrified.
11. They were terrifying, they were terrified.
12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

¹ Place the Numeral *before* the noun.² *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnui, admōnitūm,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreō, terrērē, terrui, territūm,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabītur, terrebītur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10: I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Apūd, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
<i>Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitūm,</i>	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
<i>Frāter, frātrīs, m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
<i>Māgistēr, māgistrī, m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
<i>Mēmōriā, ae, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
<i>Puēr, puērī, m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
<i>Quis, quae, quid,¹</i>	<i>who, which, what?</i>
<i>Rectē, adv.</i>	<i>righlily.</i>
<i>Tuūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>your, yours.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puēri recte monentur. 5. Discipūli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipūlus recte monītus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonītus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

¹ For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceātur.¹ 13. Memoria exercebitur. 14. Discipūli apud magistros exercentur.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were not the boys terrified ? 2. They were terrified.
3. Let² the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished.
5. Who will be advised ? 6. These boys will be advised.
7. Has your memory been exercised ? 8. My memory has been exercised.
9. Was not the general terrified ? 10. The general himself³ was not terrified.
11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. . Vocabulary.

Cāmillūs, i, m.	<i>Camillus, Roman general.</i>
Exspectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to await, expect.</i>
Hostis, is, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
Ingens, ingentis,	<i>huge, large, great.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnīs, f.	<i>legion, body of soldiers.</i>
Nōn, adv.	<i>not.</i>
Nūmērūs, i, m.	<i>number.</i>
Optō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to wish for, desire.</i>
Pēcūniā, ae, f.	<i>money.</i>

¹ *Exerceātur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196, I. 2.

² *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

³ *Himself* = ipse. See 186.

<i>Philōsophūs</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>philosopher.</i>
<i>Praeceptōr</i> , <i>praeceptōris</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>teacher.</i>
<i>Proeliūm</i> , <i>ii.</i> , <i>n.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
<i>Sūpērō</i> , <i>ārō</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātūm</i> ,	<i>to conquer.</i>
<i>Vērēcundiā</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit.
2. Hostes superāti sunt.
3. Omnes discipūli paruērant.¹
4. Romāni hostem exspectābant.
5. Romāni² ingentem hostium numērum³ exspecta-vērant.¹
6. Hostes proelium exspectābant.
7. Praeceptor tacēbat.
8. Discipūli tacēbant.
9. Verecundia juventūtem ornat.
10. Philosōphus pecuniam non habet.
11. Philosōphi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me?
2. We are expecting you.
3. Did you not await the enemy?⁴
4. We awaited the enemy.
5. Have you not a good memory?
6. I have a good memory.
7. Will the soldiers obey?
8. The brave soldiers will obey.
9. Camillus had an army.
10. He praised the army.
11. Did you advise the boy?
12. We advised the boys.
13. Were not the enemy put to flight?⁵
14. They were put to flight.

¹ In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

² Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

³ *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

⁴ Put the Latin word in the plural.

⁵ *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Ind.

Supine.

rēgō,

rēgērē,

rexī,

rectūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgō

rēgīs

rēgīt;

PLURAL.

rēgīmūs

rēgītīs

rēgīnt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rēgēbām

rēgēbās

rēgēbāt;

rēgēbāmūs

rēgēbātīs

rēgēbānt.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

rēgām

rēgēs

rēgōt;

rēgēmūs

rēgētīs

rēgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī

rexistī

rexīt;

rexīmūs

rexistīs

rexīrunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexērām

rexērās

rexērāt;

rexērāmūs

rexērātīs

rexērānt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexērō

rexērīs

rexērīt;

rexērīmūs

rexērītīs

rexērīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgām

rēgās.

rēgāt;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūs

rēgātīs

rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should rule.

rēgērēm

rēgērēs

rēgēret;

rēgērēmūs

rēgērētīs

rēgērent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexērim

rexēris

rexērit;

rexērimūs

rexēritīs

rexērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.

rexissēm

rexissēs

rexissēt;

rexissēmūs

rexissētīs

rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou;

| rēgitē, rule ye.

FUT. rēgitō, thou shalt rule,

| rēgitōtē, ye shall rule,

rēgitō, he shall rule;

| rēguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.

FUT. rectūrūs essē, to be about
to rule.

FUT. rectūrūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgendī, of ruling,

Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,

Acc. rēgendūm, ruling,

Abl. rēgendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectūm, to rule,

Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rēgōr,	rēgi,	rectūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgōr
rēgērīs, or rō
rēglītūr;

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rēgēbār
rēgēbārīs, or rō
rēgēbātūr;

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār
rēgērīs, or rō
rēgētūr;

PERFECT.

I have been or was ruled.

rectūs sūm¹
rectūs ēs
rectūs est;

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rectūs ērām¹
rectūs ērās
rectūs ērāt;

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been ruled.

rectūs ērō¹
rectūs ērīs
rectūs ērīt;

PLURAL.

rēgīmūr
rēgīmīnī
rēgūntūr.

rēgēbāmūr
rēgēbāmīnī
rēgēbāntūr.

rēgēmūr
rēgēmīnī
rēgentūr.

rectī sūmūs
rectī estīs
rectī sunt.

rectī ērāmūs
rectī ērātīs
rectī ērant.

rectī ērīmūs
rectī ērītīs
rectī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.

rögär
rögärīs, or rö
rögätür;

PLURAL.

rögämär
rögämīni
rögamtür.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be ruled.

rögörer
rögörörīs, or rö
rögörötür;

rögörēmär
rögörēmīni
rögörēntür.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm¹
rectūs sis
rectūs sit;

rectī sīmūs
rectī sītīs
rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essōm¹
rectūs essōs
rectūs essöt;

rectī essēmāus
rectī essētīs
rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rögörö, *be thou ruled;* | rögämīni, *be ye ruled.*FUT. rögítör, *thou shalt be ruled,* | röguntör, *ye shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rögī, *to be ruled.*PERF. rectūs essō, *to have been ruled.*FUT. rectūm irī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. rectūs, *ruled.*FUT. rögendūs, *to be ruled.*¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ērē, duxī, ductūm, *to lead.*
 Rēgō, ērē, rexī, rectūm, *to rule, govern.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam.
2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus.
3. Regītis, regis.
4. Regebās, regebātis.
5. Regēbant, regēbat.
6. Reget, regent.
7. Rexērunt, rexit.
8. Rexi, rexēram, rexēro.
9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus.
10. Regas, regēres, rexēris, rexisses.
11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis.
12. Regam, regāmus.
13. Regerēmus, regērem.
14. Rexērit, rexērint.
15. Rexissent, rexisset.
16. Rege, regīte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead.
2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule.
3. They lead, they rule.
4. They were leading, they were ruling.
5. They will lead, they will rule.
6. You have led, you have ruled.
7. He had led, he had ruled.
8. They had led, they had ruled.
9. He will have led, he will have ruled.
10. They may lead, they may rule.
11. He would lead, he would rule.
12. They would lead, they would rule.
13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicērō, dixī, dictūm,	<i>to say, tell, speak.</i>
Vocō, ārō, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to call.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.¹
2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt.
3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant.
4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam.
5. Vocavimus, tacuimus, diximus.
6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi.
7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt.
8. Vocavērat, tacuērat, dixērat.
9. Vocavērint, tacuērint, dixērint.
10. Vocem, taceam, dicam.
11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicērent.
12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead.
2. We call, we are silent, we speak.
3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading.
4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak.
5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led.
6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled.
7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken.
8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented,—the First, the Second, and the Third,—and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Anīmūs, i, m.</i>	<i>mind, passion.</i>
<i>Bēnē, adv.</i>	<i>well.</i>
<i>Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnīs, f.</i>	<i>eclipse.</i>
<i>Disertē, adv.</i>	<i>clearly, eloquently.</i>
<i>Edūcō, edūcērē, ēduxī, ēductūm,</i>	<i>to lead forth.</i>
<i>Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictūm,</i>	<i>to declare.</i>
<i>Lātinē, adv.</i>	<i>in Latin.</i>
<i>Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictūm,</i>	<i>to predict, foretell.</i>
<i>Sāpientēr, adv.</i>	<i>wisely.</i>
<i>Thālēs, Is, m.</i>	<i>Thales, a philosopher.</i>
<i>Tullūs, i, m.</i>	<i>Tullus, a Roman name.</i>
<i>Vērūm, i, n.</i>	<i>truth.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Bene dixisti: 2. Nonne Cicēro in senātu dixērat?
3. Cicēro diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent.
5. Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixērant.
7. Oratōres Latine dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes eduxit.
9. Hannībal exercitūm in Italianam duxit. 10. Quis bellum indixit?
11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken the truth?
3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not the general lead forth the army?
5. He has led forth the army. 6. Do you not govern your mind?
7. We govern our minds. 8. Did you predict this war?
9. We did not predict the war. 10. Who has declared war?
11. The Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regimur, regebāmur, regēmur.
3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur.
9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regīmus, regīmur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led.
3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled.. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led.
8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, du-
- cimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducītur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, duce-
- bantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocati estis, moniti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocatus eram, monitus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocatus erit, monitus erit, ductus erit.

II. Translate into Latin.

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. Vocabulary.

Mundūs, ī, m.	<i>world.</i>
Semper, <i>adv.</i>	<i>always, ever.</i>
Vērūm, ī, n.	<i>truth.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regetur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Animus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum¹ erat. 11. Multa bella indicta¹ sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

¹ Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let¹ the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallūs, i, m.	<i>Gallus</i> , a proper name.
Hirundō, hīrundīnīs, f.	<i>swallow.</i>
Lūnā, ae, f.	<i>moon.</i>
Nuntiō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to proclaim, announce.</i>
Sensūs, ūs, m.	<i>feeling, perception.</i>
Supplīcīum, ii, n.	<i>punishment.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipūli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

¹ *Let be spoken*, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. *Audio, I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audirē,	audiū,	auditūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audiūmūs
audiōs	audiūtīs
audiōt;	audiūtunt.
IMPERFECT.	
<i>I was hearing.</i>	
audiēbām	audiēbāmūs
audiēbās	audiēbātīs
audiēbāt;	audiēbānt.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

	PLURAL.
audiēm	audiēmūs
audiēs	audiētīs
audiēt;	audiētent.
PERFECT.	
<i>I heard or have heard.</i>	
audiū	audiūmūs
audiūstī	audiūstīs
audiūt;	audiūfrunt, or ērō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

	PLURAL.
audiūrām	audiūrāmūs
audiūrās	audiūrātīs
audiūrāt;	audiūrānt.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>I shall or will have heard.</i>	
audiūrō	audiūrīmūs
audiūrīs	audiūrītīs
audiūrīt;	audiūrīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

SINGULAR.

audiām

audiās

audiāt;

PLURAL.

audiāmūs

audiātīs

audiant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should hear.

audirēm

audirēs

audirēt;

audirēmūs

audirētīs

audirent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audivērim

audivērīs

audivērīt;

audivērimūs

audivērītīs

audivērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have heard.

audivissēm

audivissēs

audivissēt;

audivissēmūs

audivissētīs

audivissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, *hear thou;*| auditē, *hear ye.*FUT. auditō, *thou shalt hear,*| auditōtē, *ye shall hear,*auditō, *he shall hear;*| audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audirē, *to hear.*| PRES. audiens, *hearing.*PERF. audivissē, *to have heard.*| FUT. auditūrūs, *about to hear.*FUT. auditūrūs essē, *to be
about to hear.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. audiendī, *of hearing.*Dat. audiendō, *for hearing.*Acc. audiendūm, *hearing.*Abl. audiendō, *by hearing.*Acc. auditūm, *to hear.*Abl. auditū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audīrī,	auditūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiōr	audiomūr
audiōris, or rō	audiomīnī
auditūr;	audiointūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbār	audiēbamūr
audiēbāris, or rō	audiēbamīnī
audiēbatūr;	audiēbāntūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiēr	audiēmūr
audiēris, or rō	audiēmīnī
audiētūr;	audiēntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

auditūs sūm ¹	auditī sūmūs
auditūs ēs	auditī estīs
auditūs est;	auditī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

auditūs ērām ¹	auditī ērāmūs
auditūs ērās	auditī ērātīs
auditūs ērāt;	auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been heard.

auditūs ērō ¹	auditī ērīmūs
auditūs ērīs	auditī ērītīs
auditūs ērīt;	auditī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be heard.

SINGULAR.

audiär
audiär̄is, or r̄e
audiätür;

PLURAL.

audiämär
audiäm̄ini
audiantür.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be heard.

audir̄er
audir̄er̄is, or r̄e
audir̄etür;

audir̄emär
audir̄em̄ini
audir̄entür.

PÉRFECT.

I may have been heard.

auditūs s̄im¹
auditūs sis
auditūs sit;

auditI s̄imūs
auditI sitis
auditI sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been heard.

auditūs essēm¹
auditūs essēs
auditūs essēt;

auditI essēmūs
auditI essētis
auditI essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audir̄e, *be thou heard*; | audim̄ini, *be ye heard*.Fut. auditōr, *thou shalt be heard*, | auditōr, *he shall be heard*; | audiuntōr, *they shall be heard*.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE. •

Pres. audiri, *to be heard*.Perf. auditūs essē, *to have been heard*.Fut. auditūm irī, *to be about to be heard*.Perf. auditūs, *heard*.Fut. audiendūs, *to be heard*.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to guard.</i>
Dormiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to sleep.</i>
Erūdiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to instruct, refine, educate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Audit̄is, audiebāt̄is, audiēt̄is. 3. Audio, audim̄us. 4. Audiēbam̄, audiebām̄us. 5. Audiam̄, audiēm̄us. 6. Audiv̄imus, audiverām̄us, audiver̄t̄m̄us. 7. Audīvi, audiv̄ram̄, audiv̄ero. 8. Audivit̄, audiērunt̄. 9. Audiam̄, audiērem̄, audiv̄rim̄, audiv̄issem̄. 10. Audiām̄us, audiēm̄us, audiver̄m̄us, audiv̄issēm̄us. 11. Audīto, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invītat̄, admōnet̄, ducit̄, custōdit̄. 2. Invītant̄, admōnent̄, ducunt̄, custodiunt̄. 3. Invitābant̄, admonēbant̄, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxerārim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxerunt, audi-
vērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct.
2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing.
3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing.
4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct.
5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Arctē, adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
<i>Mūniō, īrē, īvi, ītūm,</i>	<i>to fortify.</i>
<i>Sermō, sermōnīs, m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
<i>Thrāybūlūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Thrasylus, Athenian general.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant.
2. Urbem custodiēmus.
3. Milites templum custodiunt.
4. Verum auditis.
5. Verum audite.
6. Verum audiverāmus.
7. Verba tua audīmus.
8. Verba mea audivisti.
9. Oratiōnem tuam audīvi.
10. Sermōnem audiēbam.
11. Puēri arcte dormiunt.
12. Puēri cantum lusciniae audiēbant.
13. Thrasylus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us?
2. We hear you.
3. Who heard the oration?
4. We heard the oration.
5. The pupils heard the conversation.
6. They did not hear your oration.
7. The citizens are fortifying the city.
8. Who will guard this beautiful city?
9. The brave soldiers will guard the city.
10. Will you guard the temple?
11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur.
2. Audiātur, audiāntur.
3. Audirer, audirēmur.
4. Audītus sum, auditīsumus.
5. Auditī erāmus, auditus eram.
6. Auditī erit, auditī erunt.
7. Audit, auditur.
8. Audiunt, audiuntur.
9. Audiet, audiētur.
10. Audirem, audirer.
11. Audiēbam, audiēbar.
12. Audiēbat, audiebātūr.
13. Audivit, auditus est.
14. Audivērat, auditūs erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed.
2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed.
3. They have been heard, they have been instructed.
4. They had been heard, he had been instructed.
5. He was instructing, he was instructed.
6. They are instructing, they are instructed.
7. We have heard, you have been heard.
8. You have instructed, we have been instructed.
9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGA-
TIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. *Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodīris.* 2. *Invitan-*
tur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. *Invitātur,*
admonētur, educit, custodit. 4. *Invitabitur, admonebi-*
tur, educētur, custodiētur. 5. *Invitabātur, admonebātur,*
educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. *Invitātus sum, admonītus*
sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. *Invitāti erant, ad-*
monīti erant, educti erant, custoditi erant. 8. *Invitāti*
essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. *Admonītus essemus, custoditus*
esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is
 guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are
 led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they
 will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I
 have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been
 ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I
 had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have
 been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, ī, n.	war.
Bēnignē, adv.	kindly.
Civilit̄, č.	civil.

Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiū, <i>ii., m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, vōcīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Vox audīta¹ est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus luscinae auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniārum audiētur. 5. Urbs munīta erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audīta est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audiuntur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finītum¹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.² 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGA- TIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēniensīs, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānīs, cānīs, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlūi, cultūm,	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

¹ Why *audīta* and *finītum*, instead of *audītus* and *finītus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

² Let be fortified is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmă, ārě, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Grex, grēgīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illustrō, ārě, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērě, junxi, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lăbōr, lăbōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovīs, ōvīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prūdentiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Vălētūdō, vălētūdīnīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Văriētās, văriētātīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viölō, ārě, āvī, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Sol terram illustrat.
2. Modestia pueros ornat.
3. Discipuli memoriam exercent.
4. Discipuli tui memoriam exercēbant.
5. Canes gregem custodiēbant.
6. Greges ovium custodiuntur.
7. Praeceptores juventūtem erudient.
8. Labor valetudīnem tuam firmābit.
9. Varietas nos delectat.
10. Athenienses portum munivērunt.
11. Philosophia nos eruditivit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Good men love virtue.
2. Virtue will always¹ be loved.
3. Let virtue be always practised.
4. We will always practise virtue.
5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state.
6. They will be punished.
7. Will you instruct these boys?
8. We will instruct good boys.
9. Who² led this army into Italy?
10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

¹ For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

² Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation; and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE.

214. Capio, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpērē,	cēpī,	captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

cāpiō, cāpīs, cāpīt;	cāpīmūs, cāpītīs, cāpiunt.
----------------------	----------------------------

IMPERFECT.

cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;	cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbānt.
---------------------------	--------------------------------

FUTURE.

cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -iēnt.
---------------------	--------------------------

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -it;	cēpīmūs, -istīs, -ērunt, or ērē.
-------------------	----------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;	cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant.
------------------------	-----------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēpērō, -ērīs, -ērīt;	cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērint.
-----------------------	-----------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	cāpiāmūs, -iētīs, -iant.
---------------------	--------------------------

IMPERFECT.

cāpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;	cāpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērent.
------------------------	-----------------------------

PERFECT.

cēpērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt;	cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērint.
------------------------	-----------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;	cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.
---------------------------	--------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PRES. cāpē;
FUT. cāpítō,
cāpítō;

PLURAL.

cāpítē.
cāpítōte,
cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpērē.
PERF. cēpissē.
FUT. captūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. cāpiens.
FUT. captūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen. cāpiendi.
Dat. cāpiendō.
Acc. cāpiendūm.
Abl. cāpiendō.

SUPINE.

Acc. captūm.
Abl. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
cāpiōr,

Pres. Inf.
cāpi,

Perf. Ind.
captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
cāpiōr, cāpērīs, cāpítür; | cāpímür, cāpímīnī, cāpiuntür.

IMPERFECT.

cāpiēbär, -iēbārīs, -iēbātür; | cāpiēbāmür, -iēbāmīnī, -iēbāntür.

FUTURE.

cāpiär, -iērīs, -iētür; | cāpiēmür, -iēmīnī, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captūs sūm, čs, est; | captū sūmūs, estīs, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captūs ēräm, ērās, ērät; | captū ērämūs, ērätīs, ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captūs ērō, ērīs, ērít; | captū ērimūs, ēritīs, ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

cäpiär, -iärīs, -iättür;

PLURAL.

| cäpiämür, -iämīnī, -iantür.

IMPERFECT.

cäpärer, -erérīs, -erētür;

| cäpérémür, -érémīnī, -érentür.

PERFECT.

captūs sīm, sīs, sīt;

| captī sīmūs, sītīs, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;

| captī essēmūs, esseētīs, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cäpärē;

cäpimīnī.

FUT. cäpitör,
cäpitör;

cäpiuntör.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cäpi.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. captūs essē.

PERF. captūs.

FUT. captūm irī.

FUT. cäpiendūs.¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I. Vocabulary.

A, iüb, prep. <i>with</i> abl.	<i>from, by.</i>
Accipiō, accipérē, accēpi, acceptūm,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellūm, i, n.	<i>war.</i>
Cäpiō, cäpärē, cēpi, captūm,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāginīs, f.	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Cornēliūs, ii, m. ~	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, i, m.	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.²</i>

¹ The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

² The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jáciō, jācērē, jēci, jactūm,	<i>to cast, throw, hurl.</i>
Lāpis, lāpidis, <i>m.</i>	<i>stone.</i>
Lux, lūcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>light.</i>
Mūrus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>wall.</i>
Publiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Publius, a proper name.</i>
Rēgūlus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Regulus, Roman general.</i>
Tēlūm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>javelin.</i>
Trojā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Troy, city in Asia Minor.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta¹ est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regūlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis² capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accīpit. 13. Lucem a sole āccipīmus. 14. Tuam³ epistōlam accēpi. 15. Milites tela jaciēbant.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who⁴ took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not⁵ received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

¹ For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV.-1, page 54.

² See Rule XXXII., page 24.

³ What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

⁴ Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *qui* or *quī*? See 188.

⁵ Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.

S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought : Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other :

Dōnec ēris felix, multos nūmērābis āmicos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example, two simple sentences, (1) “*You will be prosperous,*” and (2) “*You will number many friends,*” are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second : *You will number many friends, (when?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts :

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiädes accüsatus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word,—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Justitiam cõle, *Cultivate justice.* Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation:

R̄eliquit quos viros, *What heroes he has left!* Cic.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius mōritur, *Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers:

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.¹

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

Rex² dēcrēvit, The king decreed. Nep. *Ego³ ad te scribo, I write to you.* Cic.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus,³ Miltiades was accused. Nep. *Tu es tes-tis, You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.⁴

¹ Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *moritur*; the complex, *in his castris moritur*.

² In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

³ In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accusātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

⁴ Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.¹

362. A Predicate Noun² denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,² *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclarātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

EXERCISE I.

I. Vocabulary.

Amnīs, amnīs, <i>m.</i>	river.
Creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Imprētātōr, imprētātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Lātinūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lāvinīa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Mālūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nōmīnē, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhēnūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Serviūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultītīa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tūm, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then, at that time.</i>

¹ In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

² See 352, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicero *consul*¹ fuit.²
2. Cicero *orātor* fuit.
3. Cicero tum³ erat² *orātor* clarissimus.⁴
4. Puer *orātor* erit.
5. Numa erat rex.
6. Numa rex¹ creātus est.
7. Cato imperātor fuit.
8. Cato magnus imperātor fuit.
9. Scipio consul creātus est.
10. Scipio consul fuērat.
11. Stultitia est malum.
12. Gloria est fructus virtūtis.
13. Graecia artium⁵ mater nominātur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*.
2. Rome was a beautiful *city*.
3. Cato was a wise *man*.
4. Your father is a wise *man*.
5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king.
6. Latinus was king.
7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus.
8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive⁶ agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex⁶ mōrītur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Urbes Carthāgo⁶ atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

¹ Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

² For the place of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

³ Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

⁴ See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁵ *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 22.

⁶ See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthāgo*, and *Nūmantia* are all Predicate Nouns.

EXERCISE LI.

I. Vocabulary.

Alexandĕr, Alexandri, <i>m.</i>	<i>Alexander, the Great.</i>
Conjux, conjūgīs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>wife, husband.</i>
Epīrūs, <i>i.</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>
Erūditūs, <i>ā, ūm,</i>	<i>learned, instructed in.</i>
Hannō, Hannōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i>
Justūs, <i>ā, ūm,</i>	<i>just, upright.</i>
Măcădōniă, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>
Nēpōs, nēpōtīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
Paulūs, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>
Philippūs, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>
Pyrrhūs, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>Phyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
Vulnērō, ārč, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to wound.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicero, eruditissimus *homo*,¹ consul² fuit. 2. Numa, justissimus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,¹ rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.³ 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulnerātus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superāvit. 7. Paulus consul¹ regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonārum artium, nos erūdit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Tullia, *the daughter*¹ of Servius, was the wife² of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

¹ Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

² Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

³ See 214.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—See 460, 2, p. 54.

EXERCISE LII.**I. Vocabulary.**

Libertās, libertatīs, f.	liberty.
Opūlentūs, ă, ūm,	rich, opulent.
Quōtidiē, adv.	daily.
Vitiūm, ii, n.	fault, vice.
Oppidum, i, n.	town, city.

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*¹ liberāta² est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissima liberabitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissima est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudatur. 6. Virtutes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudata. 8. Libertas semper laudabitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnata sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli,³ Proceed, *Laelius*. Cic. Quid est, Cătilina,³ Why is it, *Catilina*? Cic. Tuum est, Servi,³ regnum. The kingdom is yours, *Servius*. Liv.

EXERCISE LIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Auditōr, auditōris, <i>m.</i>	hearer, <i>auditor.</i>
Cárūs, ă, ăm,	dear.
Júvēnis, ăs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	a youth, <i>young man.</i>
Légtūs, ă, <i>m.</i>	ambassador.
Sălütă, ără, ăvi, ătăm,	to salute.

¹ Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

² Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

³ *Laeli*, *Catilina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,¹ salutāmus.
2. Vos, *amīci*¹ carissimi,² salūto.
3. Vos, *auditōres* omnes, salutāmus.
4. Verba mea, *judices*, audite.
5. Haec verba, legāti, audite.
6. Vos, milites, hanc urbem clarissimam custodite.
7. Milites¹ fortissimi, patriam vestram liberāte.
8. Vestram virtutēm, juvčenes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,¹ hear the words of your father.
2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth.
3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth?
4. You, boys, have spoken the truth.
5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely.
6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country.
7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object³ of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*⁴ Cic. Libera rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

¹ In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

² See 162.

³ See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

⁴ See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

EXERCISE LIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Flāmīniūs, ii, m.	<i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general.
Marcellūs, i, m.	<i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general.
Poenūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian</i> .
Poenus, ī, m.	<i>a Carthaginian</i> .
Sanctūs, ā, ūm,	<i>holy, sacred</i> .
Siciliā, ae, f.	<i>Sicily</i> , the island of.
Spoliō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .
Syracūsae, ārūm, f. plur.	<i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily.

II. Translate into English.

1. Alexander multas *urbes*¹ expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliavērunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium¹ consūlem² superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavērant. 7. Marcellus³ magnam hujus insūlæ⁴ partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,¹ nobilissimam urbem,² expugnāvit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Do you not⁵ love your *parents*?¹ 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy⁶ taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

¹ Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

² Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

³ Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

⁴ *Hujus insūlæ*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

⁵ See 346, II. 1.

⁶ The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Römūlus septem et triginta regnāvit annos,¹ *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pēdes¹ alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

EXERCISE LV.

I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggērīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>mound, rampart.</i>
Ambūlō, ärē, ävī, ätūm,	<i>to walk.</i>
Centūm,	<i>hundred.</i>
Glädiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>sword.</i>
Läcēdaemōniūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.</i>
Lätūs, ä, üm,	<i>broad, wide.</i>
Longūs, ä, üm,	<i>long.</i>
Mensis, mensis, <i>m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
Nox, noctis, <i>f.</i>	<i>night.</i>
Octōgintā,	<i>eighty.</i>
Pēs, pēdis, <i>m.</i>	<i>foot.</i>
Quinquāgintā,	<i>fifty.</i>
Regnō, ärē, ävī, ätūm,	<i>to reign.</i>
Vigilō, ärē, ävī, ätūm,	<i>to watch, be awake.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos² servavérunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem² vigilavérām. 3. Puer octo horas

¹ *Annos* denotes Duration of Time, while *millia* and *pedes* denote Extent of Space. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

² In the Accusative denoting Duration of Time. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormīvit. 4. Latīnus multos annos regnāvit. 5. In Italīa sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes¹ latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did you not walk two *hours*?
2. We walked three *hours*.
3. Did you not sleep six *hours*?
4. We slept eight hours.
5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months.
6. Were you not in the city four months?
7. We were in the city five months.
8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.
Plāto Tārentum² vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquiniōs,² *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēnae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Athens</i> , capital of Attica.
Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgitūm,	<i>to flee, fly, run away.</i>
Lýsandēr, Lýsandri, <i>m.</i>	<i>Lysander</i> , Spartan general.
Miltiādēs, Is, <i>m.</i>	<i>Miltiades</i> , Athenian general.
Nāvīgō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sail, sail to.</i>

¹ In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

² *Rōmam*, *Tārentum*, and *Tarquiniōs* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rědūcō, rědūcerē, rědūxi, rěductūm,	<i>to lead back.</i>
Rěvčō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to recall.</i>
Spartā, ae, f.	<i>Sparta, capital of Laconia.</i>
Tārentūm, i, n.	<i>Tarentum, Italian town.</i>
Thēbānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Theban.</i>
Thēbānūs, i, m.	<i>a Theban.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicēro *Romam*¹ revocātus est.
2. Consūles *Romam* revocāti sunt.
3. Hannībal *Carthaginem*¹ revocātus erat.
4. Lysander *Athēnas*¹ navigāvit.
5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est.
6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit.
7. Thebāni exercitūm Spartam ducunt.
8. Miltiādes exercitūm Athēnas reduxit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who fled to *Carthage*?²
2. Did not the enemy flee to *Carthage*?
3. They fled to *Carthage*.
4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?²
5. The army has been led back to Rome.
6. The commander led the army to Athens.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

- I. With Verbs.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With their Derivatives,—Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

¹ In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

² The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action,—that **TO** or **FOR** which something is or is done.
A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempōri¹ cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi tīmuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis¹ vīta dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēdītur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Pons iter hostībus² dēdīt, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitātībus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVII.

I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniensīs, ē,	<i>Carthaginian.</i>
Carthāgīniensīs, īs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>a Carthaginian.</i>
Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Conon, Athenian gen'l.</i>
Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbui, dēbitūm,	<i>to owe.</i>
Displīceō, displīcērē, displīcui, displīcītūm,	<i>to displease.</i>
Dōnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to give.</i>
Gens, gentīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>race.</i>
Grātiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>favor, gratitude, thanks.</i>
Lābōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to strive for.</i>

¹ Tempōri, *sibi*, and *labōri* are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit*, *timuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nobis* and *Numītōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *deditur*.

² *Hostībus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dedit*. In the same way, *civitātībus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to show, point out.</i>
Plāceō, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm,	<i>to please.</i>
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>old age.</i>
Sententiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>opinion.</i>
Serviō, servirē, servivī, servitūm,	<i>to serve.</i>
Vīa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>way, road.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cives *legibus*¹ parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitātes *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesāri*¹ placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesāri* displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium *Caesāri* nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostībus nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*² magnam *gratiam* habēmus. 9. Habeo *senectūti* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civībus donāvit. 11. Pastor puero viam monstrāvit. 12. *Tibi* viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensībus bellum indixērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my³ *father*?¹ 2. You obeyed your *father*. 3. We will obey the *laws* of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the *king*? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell *me* (to me⁴) the *truth*?⁵ 9. I have told *you* (to you) the *truth*. 10. Will you show

¹ Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

² Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

³ In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

⁴ Dative. See Rule XII. II.

⁵ Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.
 They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—*Dative.*

391. With Adjectives, the object to which the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae solum omnibus¹ carum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. Id aptum est tempori, *This is adapted to the time.* Cic. Omni aetati mors est communis, *Death is common to every age.* Cic. Canis similis lupo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. Naturae accommodatum, *Adapted to nature.* Cic. Graeciae utile, *Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis.*

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicūs, a, ūm,	<i>friendly.</i>
Hispāniā, ae, f.	<i>Spain.</i>
Multitūdō, multitūdīnīs, f.	<i>multitude.</i>
Sāguntūm, i, n.	<i>Saguntum, city in Spain.</i>
Similis, ē,	<i>like.</i>
Sōlūm, i, n.	<i>soil.</i>
Vēritās, vēritatīs, f.	<i>verity, truth.</i>

¹ Dative, showing *to whom* the soil is *dear*, — *dear TO ALL.* In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommadatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. Translate into English.

1. Parentes *nobis*¹ cari sunt.
2. Patria *nobis* cara est.
3. Patria *tibi*¹ erit carissima.
4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum est.
5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit.
6. Victoria Romānis grata fuit.
7. Libertas multititudini grata est.
8. Veritas nobis gratissima est.
9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit.
10. Saguntum Romānis amicum fuit.
11. Hannibal Saguntum,² Hispaniae civitatem³ Romānis⁴ amicam,⁵ expugnāvit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*?
2. They are useful *to us*.
3. They will be useful *to you*.
4. This law has been useful to the state.
5. Will not this book be acceptable to you?
6. That book will be acceptable to me.
7. This book will be most acceptable⁶ to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

¹ Dative, according to Rule XIV.

² Accusative. See Rule V.

³ Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

⁴ Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

⁵ *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁶ See 162.

Catōnis¹ oratiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcūris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

EXERCISE LIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, č,	<i>common.</i>
Conscientiū, ae, f.	<i>consciousness.</i>
Dulcis, ē,	<i>sweet, pleasant.</i>
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	<i>honor.</i>
Orbis, orbis, m.	<i>circle, world.</i>
Orbis terrārum, ²	<i>the world.</i>
Parvūs, ă, ūm,	<i>small.</i>
Principiūm, ii, n.	<i>beginning.</i>
Rectūm, i, n.	<i>rectitude, right.</i>
Socrātēs, Is, m.	<i>Socrates, Athenian philosopher.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Justitia virtūtum³ regīna est. 2. Sapientia est mater omnium bonārum artiūm. 3. Socrātēs parens philosophiae fuit. 4. Virtus veri honōris⁴ mater est. 5. Patria commūnis⁵ est omnium nostrum⁶ parens. 6. Roma orbis⁷ terrārum caput fuit. 7. Omnium rerum principia parva sunt. 8. Conscientia recti est praemium virtūtis dulcissimum.

¹ Catōnis qualifies oratiōnes, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

² Literally *the circle of lands*.

³ Genitive, depending upon *regīna*. Rule XVI.

⁴ Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

⁵ Commūnis agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁶ Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

⁷ Orbis depends upon *caput*, and *terrārum* upon *orbis*.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The orations of Cicero are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avidus laudis,¹ *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otii cupidus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens voluptatis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Gloriae memor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of, in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbs in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries.

EXERCISE LX.

I. Vocabulary.

Amans, amantis,
Avidus, ă, ūm,

loving, fond of.
desirous of, eager for.

¹ *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *voluptatis*, of *efficiens*; and *gloriae*, of *memor*.

Certāmēn, certāmīn̄s, <i>n.</i>	<i>contest, strife, battle.</i>
Cūpīdūs, ū, ūm,	<i>desirous of.</i>
Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fountain.</i>
Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>	<i>praise.</i>
Nōvitās, nōvitātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>novelty.</i>
Pěritūs, ū, ūm,	<i>skilled in.</i>
Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fish.</i>
Plēnūs, ū, ūm,	<i>full.</i>
Võluptās, võluptātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avīdi *gloriae*¹ fuērunt. 2. Homīnes *novitatis* avīdi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*¹ erat amantissimus.² 4. *Patriciae* amantissimi sumus. 5. Consul gloriae cupīdus erat. 6. Cicēro gloriae cupidissimus² fuit. 7. Milites erant avidissimi certamīnis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissimi fuērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of *praise*. 2. Are you not fond of *praise*? 3. We are fond of *praise*. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of *pleasure*? 5. They were always fond of *pleasure*. 6. They are desirous of *glory*. 7. Are you not desirous of a *victory*? 8. We are desirous of a *victory*.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

¹ Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

² See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means¹ are denoted by the Ablative :

Ars utilitatem laudatur, An art is praised because of its usefulness. Cic. *Gloriā dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic. *Duōbus mōdis fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia luce collustrat, The sun illuminates all things with its light.* Cic. *Apri dentibus se tūtantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. *Aeger ērat vulnēribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*,—*mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc.,—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, With the greatest violence. Nep. *Mōre Persārum, In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. *Cum silentio audire, To hear in silence.* Liv. *Id ordine fācere, To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

¹ It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause*, *Manner*, and *Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitatem* denotes cause, because of its usefulness; *gloriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause; *modis*, manner; *luce*, means; *dentibus*, means; *vulnēribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

*Occisus est a Thēbānis, He was slain by the Thebans.*¹ Nep.

EXERCISE LXI.

I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellīs, pellīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtidiānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>daily.</i>
Scȳthae, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, ūrē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, irē, īvī, itūm,	<i>to clothe.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*² laudātus est.
2. Urbs *nātūrā*³ munīta erat.
3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur.
4. *Muneribus*³ delectāmur.
5. Roma Camilli virtūte est servāta.
6. Ca-millus hostes magno proelio superāvit.
7. Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit.
8. Scipio ingenti gloriā⁴ triumphāvit.⁵
9. Scȳthae corpōra pellībus vestiēbant.

¹ By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the *person by whom* any thing is done from the *means by which* it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

² Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

³ Ablative of Means.

⁴ Ablative of Manner.

⁵ The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?¹
2. The fields are adorned *with* beautiful *flowers*.
3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*?
4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use.
5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.²
6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence.
7. The general saved the city by his valor.
8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,³ *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.
Quid est melius bonitate,³ *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM⁴ are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimat, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi⁵ terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

¹ Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

² Ablative of Cause.

³ *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilius*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

⁴ *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

⁵ *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after* *quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

EXERCISE LXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Argentūm, i. n.	<i>silver.</i>
Avāritiā ae. f.	<i>avarice.</i>
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	<i>goodness, excellence.</i>
Elōquens, ēlōquentis,	<i>eloquent.</i>
Ferrūm, i. n.	<i>iron.</i>
Foedūs, ā, ūm,	<i>detestable.</i>
Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm,	<i>valuable.</i>
Quām, conj.	<i>than.</i>
Scientiā, ae, f.	<i>knowledge.</i>
Turris, turris, f.	<i>tower.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Virtus mihi ¹ gloriā ² est carior. 2. Patria mihi vitā ² meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius amicitiā? 4. Quid foediū est avaritiā? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpōre est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.³ 8. Quid multitudīni¹ gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.⁴ 10. Quis eloquentiō fuit quam Demosthēnes?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.² 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than ⁵ knowledge. 7. Good-

¹ See Rule XIV. 391.

² Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

³ In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

⁴ Subject of *es* understood.

⁵ In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

- I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:
- II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive :

I. Hannibal in Italiā¹ fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nos-tris castris, *In our camps.* Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way.* Cic. Ab urbe prōfliciscitur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis² fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon.* Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cic. Rōmae² fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, prep. with abl. *from, by.*

Bābylōn, Bābylōnīs, f. *Babylon, the city of.*

¹ *In Italiā, in castris, and in viā* designate the PLACE IN WHICH ; while *ab urbe* and *ex Africā* designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

² *Athēnis, Bābylōne, and Cōrintho*, being names of towns, omit the preposition ; while *Rōmae*, also the name of a town, is in the Genitive, as it is in the Singular of the First declension.

Cōrinthūs, ī, f.	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Dīön̄ysiūs, ii, m.	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, ūre, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to dwell, reside.</i>
Hortūs, ī, m.	<i>garden.</i>
Laetitiā, ae, f.	<i>joy.</i>
Lūcūs, ī, m.	<i>grove.</i>
Rēgiō, rēgiōnīs, f.	<i>region, territory.</i>
Sēnātōr, sēnātōrīs, m.	<i>senator.</i>
Trīgintā,	<i>thirty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hannibāl in *Hispaniā*¹ fuit. 2. Latīnus in *Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latīnus in illis regionībus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe² fugiēbant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses³ *Athēnis*⁴ fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistōcles Athēnis fugit. 10. Athēnis habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*⁵ regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not your father *in Italy*? 2. My father is *in Greece*. 3. Were you not in Greece? 4. We resided in Greece three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years *at Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter *at Rome*? 13. I received your letter *at Corinth*.

¹ Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

² Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

³ See Rule VIII.

⁴ In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

⁵ In the Genitive, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ab. lative:

Octōgēsimō anno¹ est mortuus, He died in his eightieth year. Cic.
Vēre convēnēre, They assembled in the spring. Liv. *Nātāli die suo,*
On his birth-day. Nep. *Hiēme et aestāte,* *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus</i> , a Roman patriot.
Dēflāgrō, ārē, āvī, ītūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Diānā, ae, f.	<i>Diana</i> , a goddess.
Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Ephesian</i> , of <i>Ephesus</i> .
Hiems, hiēmīs, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālis, č,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālis diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompeīus, ii, m.	<i>Pompey</i> , Roman general.
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribērē, scripsi, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, tempōris, n.	<i>time.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. *Natāli die² tuo scripsisti epistōlam.* 2. *Eōdem die* epistōlam tuam accēpi.³ 3. *Pompeius urbem tertio mense*

¹ *Anno, vere, die, hiēme, and aestāte* are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

² Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

³ From *accipio*.

cepit. 4. Eōdem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were you not in Athens¹ at that time?
2. We were at Corinth² at that time.
3. Do you not reside in the city¹ in winter?
4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter.
5. The city was taken at sunset.
6. Were you not in the city at that hour?
7. I was in the city at that time.
8. Were you not in Rome² on your birth-day?
9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad ūicum³ scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house.* Liv. In Itāliā, *In Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp.*

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, ūpus, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods.* Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus :

¹ Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

² Genitive of Place. See Rule XXVI. II.

³ The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, From the city. Caes. Cōram conventu, In the presence of the assembly. Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, He fled into Asia. Cic. Hannibal in Itāliā fuit, Hannibal was in Italy. Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: *In Asiam, (whither?) into Asia; In Itāliā, (where?) in Italy.*

EXERCISE LXV.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Adversūs, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
<i>Dimicō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>to fight.</i>
<i>Pēr, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
<i>Prospērē, adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
<i>Prōvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>to challenge.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, pros pērē pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Verītas per se¹ mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudab illis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*² superāti sunt. 7. Cicēro de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

¹ *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render *in itself* or *of itself*.

² *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case*, *number*, *mood*, *tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensārum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case*, *number*, *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning,—that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *io* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mens*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *am*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *am*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their forms,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

- 1) That *Themistōcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general : **THEMISTOCLES**.
- 2) That *libero*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means *to liberate* : **LIBERATED**.
Themistocles liberated.
- 3) That *imperātor* means *commander* : **THE COMMANDER**.
Themistocles the commander liberated.
- 4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country : **GREECE**.
Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.
- 5) That *totus* means *the whole, all* : **ALL**.
Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.
- 6) That *servitūs* means *servitude* : **FROM SERVITUDE**.
Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*¹ it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.² In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect³ it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.⁴
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.⁵

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

¹ It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

² These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

³ Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

⁴ That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

⁵ For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 24, 33, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.

A.

A, <i>āb</i> , prep. with abl. <i>From, by.</i>	Ambūlō, <i>ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i> <i>To walk.</i>
Accipiō, accipērē, accēpī, acceptūm.	Amicitiā, ae, f. <i>Friendship.</i>
<i>To receive.</i>	Amicūs, <i>ā, ūm.</i> <i>Friendly.</i>
Acēr, <i>ācrīs, ācrē.</i> <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i>	Amicūs, <i>ī, m.</i> <i>Friend.</i>
Aciēs, <i>āciēi, f.</i> <i>Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i>	Amnīs, amnīs, <i>m.</i> <i>River.</i>
Ad, prep. with acc. <i>To, towards, near.</i>	Amōd, <i>ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i> <i>To love.</i>
Admīnistrō, <i>ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i> <i>To administer, manage.</i>	Amōr, amōrīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Love.</i>
Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnūi, admōnītūm. <i>To admonish.</i>	Ampliō, <i>ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i> <i>To enlarge.</i>
Adventūs, <i>ūs, m.</i> <i>Arrival, approach.</i>	Ancūs, <i>ī, m.</i> <i>Ancus, a Roman king.</i>
Adversūs, prep. with acc. <i>Against.</i>	Anīmāl, <i>ānīmālīs, n.</i> <i>Animal.</i>
Aedificō, <i>ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i> <i>To build.</i>	Anīmūs, <i>ī, m.</i> <i>Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i>
Aestās, aestātīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Summer.</i>	Annūlūs, <i>ī, m.</i> <i>Ring.</i>
Agēr, <i>āgrī, m.</i> <i>Field, land.</i>	Annūs, <i>ī, m.</i> <i>Year.</i>
Aggēr, aggērīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Mound, rampart.</i>	Antē, prep. with acc. <i>Before.</i>
Agīs, Agīdīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Agis, a king of Sparta.</i>	Antīquūs, <i>ā, ūm.</i> <i>Ancient.</i>
Albānūs, <i>ā, ūm.</i> <i>Alban.</i>	Apīs, <i>āpīs, f.</i> <i>Bee.</i>
Alexandēr, Alexandrī, <i>m.</i> <i>Alexander, the Great.</i>	Appellō, <i>ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i> <i>To call.</i>
Alīquīs, alīquā, alīquid or alīquōd.	Appētens, appētentīs. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i>
<i>Some, some one. See 191.</i>	Apūd, prep. with acc. <i>In the presence of, near, before, among.</i>
Altūs, <i>ā, ūm.</i> <i>High, lofty.</i>	Apūliā, ae, f. <i>Apulia, a country in Italy.</i>
Amans, <i>āmantīs.</i> <i>Loving, fond of.</i>	Arabs, Arābīs, <i>m and f.</i> <i>Arab, an Arab.</i>
	Arctē, adv. <i>Closely, soundly.</i>
	Argentūm, <i>ī, n.</i> <i>Silver.</i>
	Arō, <i>ārārē, ārāvī, ārātūm.</i> <i>To plough.</i>

Arrögantiā, ae, f. <i>Arrogance.</i>	Cāmillās, ī, m. <i>Camillus</i> , a Roman general.
Ars, artis, f. <i>Art, skill.</i>	Campūs, ī, m. <i>Plain.</i>
Artāxerxēs, Is, m. <i>Artaxerxes</i> , a Persian king.	Cānīs, cānis, m. and f. <i>Dog.</i>
Arx, arcis, f. <i>Citadel, fortress.</i>	Cantō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To sing.</i>
Athēnae, ārūm, f. plur. <i>Athens</i> , the capital of Attica.	Cantūs, ūs, m. <i>Singing, song.</i>
Athēniensis, ē. <i>Athenian.</i>	Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm. <i>To take, capture.</i>
Athēniensis, Is, m. and f. <i>Athenian, an Athenian.</i>	Cāpūt, cāpītis, n. <i>Head, capital.</i>
Attīcūs, ī, m. <i>Atticus</i> , a Roman name.	Carmēn, carmīnīs, n. <i>Song, poem, verse.</i>
Audiō, irē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To hear.</i>	Carthāgīniensis, ē. <i>Carthaginian.</i>
Auditōr, auditōris, m. <i>Hearer, auditor.</i>	Carthāgīniensis, Is, m. and f. <i>A Carthaginian.</i>
Aureūs, ā, ūm. <i>Golden.</i>	Carthāgō, Carthāgīnīs, f. <i>Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.</i>
Aurūm, ī, n. <i>Gold.</i>	Carthāgō Nōvā. <i>New Carthage, Carthagena</i> , a city of Spain.
Avārītiā, ae, f. <i>Avarice.</i>	Cārūs, ī, ūm. <i>Dear.</i>
Avīdūs, ā, ūm. <i>Desirous of, eager for.</i>	Cātō, Cātōnīs, m. <i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
Avīs, īvīs, f. <i>Bird.</i>	Centūm. <i>One hundred.</i> See 175, 2.
<i>B.</i>	
Bābylōn, Bābylōnīs, f. <i>Babylon</i> , the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.	Certāmēn, certāmīnīs, n. <i>Contest, strife, battle.</i>
Beātūs, ā, ūm. <i>Happy, blessed.</i>	Cibūs, ī, m. <i>Food.</i>
Bellūm, ī, n. <i>War, warfare.</i>	Cicērō, Cicērōnīs, m. <i>Cicero</i> , the celebrated Roman orator.
Bēnē, adv. <i>Well.</i>	Civīlis, ē. <i>Civil.</i>
Bēnignē, adv. <i>Kindly.</i>	Civīls, civīs, m. and f. <i>Citizen.</i>
Bōnītās, bōnītātīs, f. <i>Goodness, excellence.</i>	Civītās, civītātīs, f. <i>State, city.</i>
Bōnūs, ā, ūm. <i>Good.</i>	Clārtūs, ī, ūm. <i>Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.</i>
Brēvīs, ē. <i>Short, brief.</i>	Classīs, classīs, f. <i>Fleet, navy.</i>
Brūtūs, ī, m. <i>Brutus</i> , a celebrated Roman patriot.	Coerceō, coercērē, coercuī, coercītūm. <i>To check.</i>
<i>C.</i>	
Caesār, Caesāris, m. <i>Cæsar</i> , a celebrated Roman commander.	Cōlōd, cōlērē, cōlūi, cultūm. <i>To practise, cultivate.</i>
Caiūs, ii, m. <i>Caius</i> , a proper name.	Commūnīs ē. <i>Common.</i>
	Condemnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To condemn.</i>
	Condītōr, condītōris, m. <i>Founder.</i>
	Conjux, conjūgīs, m. and f. <i>Wife, husband, spouse.</i>

Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Conon</i> , an Athenian general.	Dēmosthēnēs, Is, <i>m.</i> <i>Demosthenes</i> , the celebrated Athenian orator.	
Conscientiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Consciousness</i> .	Diūnā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Diana</i> , the goddess of the chase.	
Consiliūm, ii, <i>n.</i> <i>Design, plan</i> .	Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm. <i>To say, speak, tell.</i>	
Conspectus, ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>Sight, view, presence.</i>	Diēs, diēi, <i>m.</i> <i>Day</i> . See 119, note.	
Constil, constilīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Consul</i> .	Diligens, diligēntīs. <i>Diligent</i> .	
Contrā, prep. with acc. <i>Against, opposite to, contrary to.</i>	Diligentiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Diligence</i> .	
Convōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To assemble, call together.</i>	Dimīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To fight.</i>	
Cōrinthiūs, ī, <i>f.</i> <i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.	Diōnysiūs, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.	
Corneliūs, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Cornelius</i> , a Roman name.	Discipūlūs, ī, <i>m.</i> <i>Pupil</i> .	
Cōrōnā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Crown</i> .	Disertē, adv. <i>Clearly, eloquently.</i>	
Corpūs, corpōrīs, <i>n.</i> <i>Body, person.</i>	Displīceō, displīcērē, displīcuī, displīcītūm. <i>To displease.</i>	
Creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To create, make, appoint, elect.</i>	Divīnūs, ī, īm. <i>Divine</i> .	
Crūdēlīs, ē. <i>Cruel.</i>	Dölör, dölörīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Pain, grief, suffering.</i>	
Crūdūs, ī, īm. <i>Unripe.</i>	Dōnōd, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To give, present.</i>	
Culpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To blame.</i>	Dōnūm, ī, <i>n.</i> <i>Gift.</i>	
Cūm, prep. with abl. <i>With.</i>	Dormiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To sleep.</i>	
Cūpīdūs, ī, īm. <i>Desirous of.</i>	Drācō, Drācōnīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Draco</i> , an Athenian lawgiver.	
Cūrēs, Cūriūm, <i>m. plur.</i> <i>Cures, a Sabine town.</i>	Dūcentī, ae, ī. <i>Two hundred.</i>	
Custōdiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To guard.</i>	Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm. <i>To lead.</i>	
Custōs, custōdīs, <i>m. and f.</i> <i>Keeper, guard.</i>	Dulcīs, ē. <i>Sweet, pleasant.</i>	
<i>D.</i>		
Dē, prep. with abl. <i>Concerning.</i>	Duō, ae, ö. <i>Two.</i> See 176.	
Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbuī, dēbītūm. <i>To owe.</i>	Dūplīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To double, increase.</i>	
Dēcēm. <i>Ten.</i> See 175.	Dux, dūcīs, <i>m. and f.</i> <i>Leader, general.</i>	
Dēcīmūs, ī, īm. <i>Tenth.</i>	<i>E.</i>	
Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Eclipse.</i>	E, ex, prep. with abl. <i>From.</i>	
Dēflāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To burn, be consumed.</i>	Ebričtās, ēbričtātīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Drunkenness.</i>	
Dēlectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To delight, please.</i>	Edūcō, ēdūcērē, ēduxī, ēductūm. <i>To lead forth, lead out.</i>	
Dēmārātūs, ī, <i>m.</i> <i>Demaratus</i> , a Corinthian.	Effūgiō, effūgērē, effūgi, effūgītūm. <i>To escape.</i>	
	Egō, meī. <i>I.</i> See 184.	

Egrēgiūs, ă, ūm. *Distinguished.*

Egrēgiē, *adv.* *Excellently.*

Elēphantūs, ī, *m.* *Elephant.*

Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*

Elōquentiā, ac, *f.* *Eloquence.*

Ephēsiūs, ă, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*

Epirūs, ī, *f.* *Epirus, a country in Greece.*

Epistōlā, ae, *f.* *Letter.*

Erūdiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To instruct, refine, educate.*

Erūditūs, ă, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*

Ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*

Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitūm. *To exercise, train.*

Exercitūs, ūs, *m.* *Army.*

Expugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To take, take by storm.*

Exspectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To await, expect.*

Exsūl, exsūlīs, *m. and f.* *Exile.*

F.

Faciēs, faciēi, *f.* *Face, appearance.*

Ferrūm, ī, *n.* *Iron.*

Fertiliś, ē. *Fertile.*

Fidēlitās, fidēllitatis, *f.* *Fidelity, faithfulness.*

Fidēs, fidei, *f.* *Faith, fidelity.*

Fidūs, ă, ūm. *Faithful.*

Filiā, ae, *f.* *Daughter.*

Filiūs, ii, *m.* *Son.*

Finiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To finish, bring to a close.*

Finīs, finīs, *m.* *Limit, territory.*

Firmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To strengthen, confirm.*

Flāmīniūs, ii, *m.* *Flaminius, a Roman general.*

Flōs, flōris, *m.* *Flower.*

Feeđūs, ă, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontis, *m.* *Fountain.*

Fortis, ē. *Brave.*

Fortitēr, *adv.* *Bravely.*

Fortitūdō, fortitūdīns, *f.* *Bravery, fortitude.*

Fossā, ae, *f.* *Ditch, moat.*

Frātēr, frātrīs, *m.* *Brother.*

Fructūs, ūs, *m.* *Fruit, produce, income.*

Frūmentūm, ī, *n.* *Corn, grain.*

Fūgā, ae, *f.* *Flight.*

Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgitūm. *To flee, fly, run away.*

Fūgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To rout, drive away.*

Fūnestūs, ă, ūm. *Destructive.*

Fürōr, fūrōrīs, *m.* *Madness, insanity.*

G.

Gallūs, ī, *m.* *Gallus, a proper name.*

Gallūs, ī, *m.* *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*

Gemmā, ae, *f.* *Gem.*

Gēnēr, gēnērī, *m.* *Son-in-law.*

Gens, gentis, *f.* *Race.*

Germāniā, ae, *f.* *Germany.*

Glādiūs, ii, *m.* *Sword.*

Glōbōsūs, ă, ūm. *Spherical.*

Glōriā, ae, *f.* *Glory.*

Graeciā, ae, *f.* *Greece.*

Graecūs, ă, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*

Graectūs, ī, *m.* *Greek, a Greek.*

Grātiā, ae, *f.* *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*

Grātūs, ă, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*

Grex, grēgīs, *m.* *Herd, flock.*

H.

Häbeō, häbērē, häbuī, häbitūm. *To have, hold.*

Häbitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannibäl, Hannibális, <i>m.</i> <i>Hannibal</i> , a celebrated Carthaginian general.	Innöcens, innocentis. <i>Innocent.</i>
Hannō, Hannónis, <i>m.</i> <i>Hanno</i> , a Carthaginian general.	Insāniä, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Insanity.</i>
Hastä, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Spear.</i>	Instüla, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Island.</i>
Hic, haec, hōc. <i>This.</i>	Intēr, prep. with acc. <i>Between,</i> among, in the midst of.
Hiems, hiëmís, <i>f.</i> <i>Winter.</i>	Intrō, ärë, ävî, ätüm. <i>To enter.</i>
Hírundō, hírundínis, <i>f.</i> <i>Swallow.</i>	Inventör, inventörís, <i>m.</i> <i>Inventor.</i>
Hispāniä, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Spain.</i>	Invitō, ärë, ävî, ätüm. <i>To invite.</i>
Hispánus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>A Spaniard.</i>	Ipsë, ipsä, ipsüm. <i>Self, he, himself.</i> See 186.
Hómērüs, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Homer</i> , the celebrated Grecian poet.	Is, eä, id. <i>That, he, she, it.</i>
Hómëd, hóménis, <i>m.</i> <i>Man.</i>	Istë, istä, istüd. <i>That, such.</i> See 186.
Hönör, hönörís, <i>m.</i> <i>Honor.</i>	Italiä, ac, <i>f.</i> <i>Italy.</i>
Hörä, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Hour.</i>	 J.
Hostis, hostis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>Enemy.</i>	Jaciö, jácérë, jécî, jactüm. <i>To cast,</i> throw, hurl.
 I.	Jäm, adv. <i>Now, already.</i>
Idäm, cädäm, Ydäm. <i>Same, the same.</i> See 186.	Jucundüs, ä, üm. <i>Delightful, pleasant.</i>
Ignöröd, ärë, ävî, ätüm. <i>To be ignorant of, not to know.</i>	Jüdex, jüdícis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>Judge.</i>
Illë, illä, illüd. <i>That, he, she, it.</i> See 186.	Jungö, jungérë, junxi, junctüm. <i>To join.</i>
Illuströd, ärë, ävî, ätüm. <i>To illustrate, illumine.</i>	Justitiä, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Justice.</i>
Imágö, Imáginiä, <i>f.</i> <i>Image, picture.</i>	Justüs, ä, üm. <i>Upright, just.</i>
Impatiens, impatiens. <i>Impatient.</i>	Jüvénüs, jüvénis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>A youth, young man.</i>
Impräfätör, impräfätörís, <i>m.</i> <i>Commander.</i>	Jüventüs, jüventüüs, <i>f.</i> <i>Youth, a youth, a young person.</i>
Impérium, ii, <i>n.</i> <i>Reign, power, government.</i>	 L.
Impétüs, üs, <i>m.</i> <i>Attack.</i>	Läbör, läbörís, <i>m.</i> <i>Labor.</i>
Impröbitüs, impröbitüs, <i>f.</i> <i>Wickedness.</i>	Läböröd, ärë, ävî, ätüm. <i>To strive for, labor, work.</i>
In, prep. with acc. and abl. <i>Into, in, within.</i>	Läcëdaemöniüs, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.</i>
Incertüs, ä, üm. <i>Uncertain.</i>	Laetitiä, ac, <i>f.</i> <i>Joy.</i>
Indicö, indicérë, indixi, indictüm. <i>To declare.</i>	Läpis, läpidis, <i>m.</i> <i>Stone.</i>
Infestöd, ärë, ävî, ätüm. <i>To infest.</i>	Lätinë, adv. <i>In Latin.</i>
Ingens, ingentis. <i>Huge, large, great.</i>	Lätinüs, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Latinus, a Latin king.</i>
	Lätüs, ä, üm. <i>Broad.</i>

Laudabilis, ē. <i>Praiseworthy, laudable.</i>	Mensū, ac, f. <i>Table.</i>
Laudō, ūrč, āvī, ātūm. <i>To praise.</i>	Mensis, mensis, m. <i>Month.</i>
Laus, laudis, f. <i>Praise.</i>	Mercēs, mercēdis, f. <i>Reward.</i>
Lāviniā, ac, f. <i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>	Měreč, měrērč, měruň, měritūm. <i>To deserve, merit.</i>
Lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, f. <i>Embassy.</i>	Mečs, š, ūm. <i>My.</i> See 185.
Lēgatūs, ī, m. <i>Ambassador.</i>	Milčs, militis, m. <i>Soldier.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, f. <i>Legion, a body of soldiers.</i>	Miliādēs, Is, m. <i>Miltiades, an Athenian general.</i>
Lēgō, lēgērč, lēgi, lectūm. <i>To choose, appoint.</i>	Mōdestiā, ac, f. <i>Modesty.</i>
Leč, leonis, m. <i>Lion.</i>	Mōneč, mōnērč, mōnuň, mōniťum. <i>To advise.</i>
Lētālis, ē. <i>Mortal, deadly.</i>	Mons, montis, m. <i>Mountain.</i>
Lex, lēgis, f. <i>Law.</i>	Monstrō, ūrč, āvī, ātūm. <i>To show, point out.</i>
Libēr, libri, m. <i>Book.</i>	Mōrč, ac, f. <i>Delay.</i>
Libērō, ūrč, āvī, ātūm. <i>To liberate.</i>	Mors, mortis, f. <i>Death.</i>
Libertās, libertatis, f. <i>Liberty.</i>	Multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. <i>Magnitude.</i>
Longūs, š, ūm. <i>Long.</i>	Multūs, š, ūm. <i>Much, many.</i>
Lūcīs, ī, m. <i>Grove.</i>	Mundūs, ī, m. <i>World, universe.</i>
Lūnā, ac, f. <i>Moon.</i>	Mūnič, irč, īvī, ītūm. <i>To fortify, defend.</i>
Luscīniā, ae, f. <i>Nightingale.</i>	Mūnūs, mūnēris, n. <i>Gift, present.</i>
Lux, lūcis, f. <i>Light.</i>	Mūrūs, ī, m. <i>Wall.</i>
Luxūriā, ae, f. <i>Luxury.</i>	Mūtātič, mūtātiōnis, f. <i>Change, phase.</i>
Lycurgūs, ī, m. <i>Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.</i>	
Lýsandér, Lýsandri, m. <i>Lysander, a Spartan general.</i>	
<i>M.</i>	
Mācđoniā, ae, f. <i>Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.</i>	Nātālis, ē. <i>Belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Māgistrē, māgistrī, m. <i>Master, teacher.</i>	Nātālis dičs. <i>Birth-day.</i>
Magnōpērč, adv. <i>Greatly.</i>	Nātūrč, ac, f. <i>Nature.</i>
Magnūs, š, ūm. <i>Great, large.</i>	Nāvālīs, ē. <i>Naval.</i>
Mālūm, ī, n. <i>Evil.</i>	Nāvīgō, ūrč, āvī, ātūm. <i>To sail to.</i>
Marcellūs, ī, m. <i>Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.</i>	Nāvīs, nāvīs, f. <i>Ship.</i>
Mārč, māris, n. <i>Sea.</i>	Nēcessārīs, š, ūm. <i>Necessary.</i>
Mātēr, mātrīs, f. <i>Mother.</i>	NēcessItās, nēcessItātis, f. <i>Necessity.</i>
Mātūrūs, š, ūm. <i>Ripe.</i>	Nēpōs, nēpōtīs, m. <i>Grandson.</i>
Mēmōriā, ac, f. <i>Memory.</i>	Nōbīlīs, ē. <i>Noble.</i>
	Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, n. <i>Name.</i>
	Nōmīnō, ūrč, āvī, ātūm. <i>To call, name.</i>

Nōn, *adv.* *Not.*

Nonnē, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *Yes.* See 346, II., 2.

Nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm. *Our, our own, ours.*

Nōvītās, nōvītātis, *f.* *Novelty.*

Nōvūs, ā, ūm. *New.*

Nox, noctis, *f.* *Night.*

Nübēs, nübīs, *f.* *Cloud.*

Nūm, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *No.* See 346, II., 1.

Nūmā, ae, *m.* *Numa*, a Roman king.

Nūmērūs, ī, *m.* *Number, quantity.*

Nummūs, ī, *m.* *Money, a piece of money, a coin.*

Nuntiō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To proclaim, announce.*

O.

Obsēs, obsēdīs, *m. and f.* *Hostage.*

Occāsūs, ūs, *m.* *Setting, going down.*

Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To occupy, take possession of.*

Octāvūs, ā, ūm.* *Eighth.*

Octō. *Eight.* See 175, 2.

Octōgintā. *Eighty.* See 175, 2.

Ocūlūs, ī, *m.* *Eye.*

Odiōsūs, ī, ūm. *Odious, hateful.*

Omnīs, ē. *All, every, whole.*

Oppidūm, ī, *n.* *Town, city.*

Oppugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To besiege, take by storm.*

Optō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To wish for, desire.*

Opūlentās, ī, ūm. *Rich, opulent.*

Opūs, opērīs, *n.* *Work.*

Oratiō, oratiōnīs, *f.* *Oration, speech.*

Oratōr, oratōrīs, *m.* *Orator.*

Orbīs, orbīs, *m.* *Circle.*

Orbīs terrārūm. *The world.*

Ornō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To adorn, be an ornament to.*

Ovīs, ovīs, *f.* *Sheep.*

P.

Pārens, pārentīs, *m. and f.* *Parent.*

Pāreō, pārērē, pāruī, pārītūm. *To obey.*

Pars, partīs, *f.* *Part, portion.*

Parvūs, ū, ūm. *Small.*

Passēr, passērīs, *m.* *Sparrow.*

Pastōr, pastōrīs, *m.* *Shepherd.*

Pātēr, pātrīs, *m.* *Father.*

Pātriā, ae, *f.* *Native country, country.*

Paulūs, ī, *m.* *Paulus*, a Roman consul.

Pax, pācīs, *f.* *Peace.*

Pēcūniā, ae, *f.* *Money.*

Pellīs, pellīs, *f.* *Skin, hide.*

Pēr, prep. with acc. *Of, through.*

Pērāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To wander through.*

Pēritūs, ī, ūm. *Skilled in.*

Persā, ae, *m.* *A Persian.*

Pēs, pēdīs, *m.* *Foot.*

Philippōs, ī, *m.* *Philip*, king of Macedon.

Philōsophiā, ae, *f.* *Philosophy.*

Philōsophūs, ī, *m.* *Philosopher.*

Piētās, piētātīs, *f.* *Filial affection, piety, duty.*

Pirātā, ae, *m.* *Pirate.*

Piscīs, piscīs, *m.* *Fish.*

Pisistratūs, ī, *m.* *Pisistratus*, tyrant of Athens.

Plāceō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm. *To please.*

Plēnūs, ī, ūm. *Full.*

Poenūs, ī, ūm. *Carthaginian.*

Poenus, ī, *m.* *A Carthaginian.*

Pōmītūm, ī, *n.* *Fruit.*

Pompiliūs, ii, *m.* *Pompilius*, a Roman name.

Pompēiūs, ii, *m.* *Pompey*, a celebrated Roman general.

Pondūs, pondērīs, *n.* *Weight, mass.*

Portūs, ūs, m. <i>Port, harbor.</i>	Quinquāgintā. <i>Fifty.</i> See 175, 2.	
Post, prep. with acc. <i>After.</i>	Quinque. <i>Five.</i> See 175, 2.	
Pōtentis, pōtentis. <i>Powerful, able.</i>	Quintūs, ū, ūm. <i>Fifth.</i>	
Praebeō, praebērē, praebui, praebe- tūm. <i>To show, furnish, give.</i>	Quiſ, quae, quid? <i>interrog. pronoun.</i> <i>Who, which, what?</i> See 188.	
Praeceptōr, praeceptoris, m. <i>Teacher, instructor.</i>	Quīvis, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis, <i>indef. pronoun.</i> <i>Whoever, whatever.</i> See 191.	
Praeceptūm, ū, n. <i>Rule, precept.</i>	Quōtidiānūs, ū, ūm. <i>Daily.</i>	
Praeclārūs, ū, ūm. <i>Renowned, dis- tinguished.</i>	Quōtidiē, adv. <i>Daily.</i>	
Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixi, praedictūm. <i>To predict, foretell.</i>	 <i>R.</i>	
Praemīum, ii, n. <i>Reward.</i>	Rāmūs, ū, m. <i>Branch.</i>	
Prātūm, ū, n. <i>Meadow.</i>	Rātiō, rātiōnīs, f. <i>Reason.</i>	
Prētiōsūs, ū, ūm. <i>Valuable.</i>	Rectē, adv. <i>Rightly.</i>	
Primūs, ū, ūm. <i>First.</i>	Rectūm, ū, n. <i>Right, rectitude.</i>	
Principiūm, ii, n. <i>Beginning.</i>	Rēdūcō, rēdūcērē, rēduxī, rēductūm. <i>To lead back.</i>	
Prō, prep. with abl. <i>In behalf of, for.</i>	Rēgīnā, ae, f. <i>Queen.</i>	
Proeliūm, ii, n. <i>Battle.</i>	Rēgiō, rēgiōnīs, f. <i>Region, terri- tory.</i>	
Prosperē, adv. <i>Successfully.</i>	Rēgūlūs, ū, m. <i>Regulus, a Roman general.</i>	
Prōvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To chal- lenge.</i>	Regnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To reign.</i>	
Prūdentīa, ae, f. <i>Prudence.</i>	Regnūm, ū, n. <i>Kingdom, royal author- ity.</i>	
Publiūs, ii, m. <i>Publius, a Roman name.</i>	Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm. <i>To rule.</i>	
Puellā, ac, f. <i>Girl.</i>	Rēnōvō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To renew.</i>	
Puēr, puērī, m. <i>Boy.</i>	Rēs, rei, f <i>Thing, affair.</i>	
Pugnā, ac, f. <i>Battle.</i>	Rēs pūblicā. <i>Republic.</i>	
Pugnō, ātē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To fight.</i>	Rēvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To recall.</i>	
Pulchér, pulchrā, pulchrūm. <i>Beauti- ful.</i>	Rex, rēgis, m. <i>King.</i>	
Pūnicūs, ū, ūm. <i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>	Rhēntūs, ū, m. <i>Rhine.</i>	
Pyrrhus, ū, m. <i>Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.</i>	Rōmā, ae, f. <i>Rome.</i>	
Q.		
Quām, conj. <i>Than.</i>	Rōmānūs, ū, ūm. <i>Roman.</i>	
Quartūs, ū, ūm. <i>Fourth.</i>	Rōmānūs, ū, m. <i>Roman, a Roman.</i>	
Quattuōr. <i>Four.</i> See 175, 2.	Rōmūlūs, ū, m. <i>Romulus, the found- er of Rome.</i>	
Qui, quae, quōd, rel. pronoun. <i>Who, which, what.</i> See 187.	S.	
S.		
Saguntūm, ū, n. <i>Saguntum, a town in Spain.</i>		

Sälūs, sälütis, <i>f.</i> <i>Safety.</i>	Sölön, Sölönis, <i>m.</i> <i>Solon</i> , an Athenian legislator.
Sälütärīs, ē. <i>Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.</i>	Sölüm, ī, <i>n.</i> <i>Soil.</i>
Sälütō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To salute.</i>	Spartā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Sparta</i> , capital of Laconia.
Sanctūs, ī, ūm. <i>Holy, sacred.</i>	Spēciēs, spēciī, <i>f.</i> <i>Appearance.</i>
Säpiens, säpien̄ts. <i>Wise.</i>	Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To hope.</i>
Säpientēr, <i>adv.</i> <i>Wisely.</i>	Spēs, spēi, <i>f.</i> <i>Hope.</i>
Säpientiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Wisdom.</i>	Spöliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To rob, spoil, despoil.</i>
Schölä, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>School.</i>	Stimulō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To stimulate.</i>
Scientiā, ac, <i>f.</i> <i>Knowledge.</i>	Stultitiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Folly.</i>
Scipiō, Scipiōnis, <i>m.</i> <i>Scipio</i> , a distinguished Roman.	Sui, sibl. <i>Himself, herself, itself.</i> See 184.
Scribō, scribērē, scriptī, scriptūm. <i>To write.</i>	Sūm, essē, fuī. <i>To be.</i> See 204.
Scythae, ārūm, <i>m. plur.</i> <i>The Scythians.</i>	Süpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To conquer.</i>
Sēcundūs, ī, ūm: <i>Second, favorable.</i>	Suppliciūm, ii, <i>n.</i> <i>Punishment.</i>
Sempēr, <i>adv.</i> <i>Always, ever.</i>	Suūs, ī, ūm. <i>His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.</i>
Sēnātōr, sēnātōris, <i>m.</i> <i>Senator.</i>	Syracūsae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i> <i>Syracuse</i> , a city of Sicily.
Sēnātūs, ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>Senate.</i>	
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Old age.</i>	
Sensūs, ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>Feeling, perception, sense.</i>	
Sententiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Opinion.</i>	T.
Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i> <i>Discourse, conversation.</i>	Täceō, täcērē, täcuī, täcītūm. <i>To be silent.</i>
Serviō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To serve.</i>	Tarentūm, ī, <i>n.</i> <i>Tarentum</i> , an Italian town.
Serviūs, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Servius</i> , a Roman proper name.	Tarquiniūs, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Tarquin</i> , a Roman king.
Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To preserve, keep, save.</i>	Tēlūm, ī, <i>n.</i> <i>Javelin, weapon.</i>
Servūs, ī, <i>m.</i> <i>Slave.</i>	Tēmēritās, tēmēritātīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Rashness.</i>
Sex. <i>Six.</i> See 175, 2.	Templūm, ī, <i>n.</i> <i>Temple.</i>
Siciliā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Sicily.</i>	Tempūs, tempōris, <i>n.</i> <i>Time.</i>
Silentiūm, ii, <i>n.</i> <i>Silence.</i>	Terrā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Land, earth.</i>
Similīs, ē. <i>Like.</i>	Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm. <i>To frighten, terrify.</i>
Singūlärīs, ē. <i>Remarkable, singular.</i>	Tertiūs, ī, ūm. <i>Third.</i>
Söcōr, söcērī, <i>m.</i> <i>Father-in-law.</i>	Thalēs, īs, <i>m.</i> <i>Thales</i> , a Grecian philosopher.
Sociūs, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Ally, associate.</i>	Thēbānūs, ī, ūm. <i>Theban, belonging to Thebes</i> (a city in Greece).
Socratēs, īs, <i>m.</i> <i>Socrates</i> , the celebrated Athenian philosopher.	
Söll, söllīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Sun.</i>	

Thēbānūs, ī, m. <i>A Theban.</i>	Vērcundiā, ae, f. <i>Modesty.</i>
Thēmīstōclēs, īs, m. <i>Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.</i>	Vērītās, vērītātīs, f. <i>Truth, verity.</i>
Thrāsybūlūs, ī, m. <i>Thrasylus, the liberator of Athens.</i>	Vērūs, ā, ūm. <i>True, real.</i>
Ticinūs, ī, m. <i>Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.</i>	Vērtūm, ī, n. <i>Truth.</i>
Trēs, triā. <i>Three.</i> See 176.	Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. <i>Your.</i>
Trigintā. <i>Thirty.</i> See 175, 2.	Vestiō, irē, ivī, itūm. <i>To clothe.</i>
Triumphō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To triumph.</i>	Viā, ae, f. <i>Way, road.</i>
Trōjā, ae, f. <i>Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.</i>	Victōr, victōrīs, m. <i>Victor, conqueror.</i>
Tū, tui. <i>Thou, you.</i> See 184.	Victōriā, ae, f. <i>Victory.</i>
Tulliā, ae, f. <i>Tullia, a Roman proper name.</i>	Victōriā, ae, f. <i>Victoria, Queen of England.</i>
Tullūs, ī, m. <i>Tullus, a Roman king.</i>	Vigilō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To watch, be awake.</i>
Tūm, adv. <i>Then, at that time.</i>	Vīlīs, ē. <i>Cheap.</i>
Turrīs, turrīs, f. <i>Tower.</i>	Vindex, vindicīs, m. and f. <i>Vindictor, avenger.</i>
Tuūs, ā, ūm. <i>Your, yours, thy, thine.</i>	Viōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To violate.</i>
Tyrrannūs, ī, m. <i>Tyrant.</i>	Vir, virī, m. <i>Man, hero, soldier.</i>
Tyriūs, ā, ūm. <i>Tyrian.</i>	Virgō, virgīnīs, f. <i>Maiden, girl.</i>
U.	Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. <i>Valor, virtue.</i>
Ulyssēs, īs, m. <i>Ulysses, a Grecian king.</i>	Vitā, ae, f. <i>Life.</i>
Universūs, ī, ūm. <i>All, the whole, entire.</i>	Vitiūm, ii, n. <i>Fault, vice.</i>
Unūs, ā, ūm. <i>One.</i> See 176.	Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To find fault with, censure, blame.</i>
Urbs, urbīs, f. <i>City.</i>	Vivō, vivērē, vixī, victūm. <i>To live, reside.</i>
Usūs, ūs, m. <i>Use.</i>	Vōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To call.</i>
Utilīs, ē. <i>Useful.</i>	Vōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To fly.</i>
V.	Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. <i>Voluntary.</i>
Välētūdō, välētūdīnīs, f. <i>Health.</i>	Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f. <i>Pleasure.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, f. <i>Variety.</i>	Vox, vōcīs, f. <i>Voice.</i>
Vāriūs, ā, ūm. <i>Various.</i>	Vulnērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To wound.</i>
Varrō, varrōnīs, m. <i>Varro, a Roman consul.</i>	Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. <i>Wound.</i>
Vēr, vērlīs, n. <i>Spring.</i>	Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. <i>Vulture.</i>
Verbūm, ī, n. <i>Word.</i>	Vultūs, ūs, m. <i>Countenance.</i>
X.	
Xerxēs, īs, m. <i>Xerxes, a Persian king.</i>	

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A, an. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.

Acceptable. *Grātūs, ã, üm.*

Admonish. *Admōneõ, admōnēr̄e, admōnūi, admōnūlūm.*

Adorned. *Ornātūs, ã, üm.*

Advise. *Mōneõ, mōnēr̄e, mōnūi, mōnūlūm.*

After. *Post, prep. with acc.*

Against. *Contrā, prep. with acc.* Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

Alexander. *Alexandér, Alexandri, m.*

All. *Omnis, õ.*

Always. *Semp̄er, adv.*

Announce. *Nuntiõ, ãr̄e, ãvī, ãtūm.*

Appoint. *Creõ, ãr̄e, ãvī, ãtūm.*

Army. *Exercitūs, ūs, m.*

Arrival. *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

At. *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time.* See 421 and 426.

Athenian. *Athēniens̄, õ.*

Athenian, an Athenian. *Athēniens̄, ūs, ū, m. and f.*

Athens. *Athēnae, ãr̄um, f. plur.*

Attack. *Impētūs, ūs, m.*

Await. *Exspectõ, ãr̄e, ãvī, ãtūm.*

B.

Battle. *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

Battle-array. *Aciës, ëi, f.*

Be. *Sūm, esse, ūi.*

Be silent. *Täceõ, täcēr̄e, täcuī, täctūm.*

Beautiful. *Pulchēr̄, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*

Before. *Antē, prep. with acc.*

Bird. *Avīs, ūvīs, f.*

Birth-day. *Nātālīs diēs, m.*

Blame. *Vitūpēr̄, ãr̄e, ãvī, ãtūm.*

Book. *Libēr, libri, m.*

Boy. *Puēr, puēri, m.*

Brave. *Fortis, õ.*

Bravely. *Fortitēr, adv.*

Bravery. *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*

Bring to a close. *Finiõ, ir̄e, ūvī, ūtūm.*

Brother. *Frāter, frātr̄is, m.*

Brutus. *Brūtus, i, m.*

By. *A, ãb, prep. with abl.* Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

C.

Caius. *Cāiūs, ū, m.*

Call. *Vocõ, ãr̄e, ãvī, ãtūm.*

Camillus. *Cāmillūs, i, m.*

Can, can have. See *may, may have.*

Carthage. *Carthāgō, Carthāgīnīs, f.*

Carthaginian. *Carthāgīniens̄, õ.*

Carthaginian, a Carthaginian. *Carthāgīniens̄, ūs, m. and f.*

Cato. *Cātō, Cātōnts, m.*

Cicero. *Cicērō, Cicērōnts, m.*

Citizen. *Civis*, *civis*, m. and f.

City. *Urbs*, *urbis*, f.

Cloud. *Nubes*, *nubis*, f.

Commander. *Impérātor*, *impērātōris*, m.

Concerning. *Dē*, prep. with abl.

Consul. *Consul*, *consulīs*, m.

Contrary to. *Contrā*, prep. with acc.

Conversation. *Sermō*, *sermōnis*, m.

Corinth. *Cōrīnθūs*, i, f.

Corinthian. *Cōrīnθiūs*, ã, ūm.

Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrīnθiūs*, ã, ūm., m.

Cornelius. *Cōrnēliūs*, ã, m.

Could, could have. See *might*, *might have*.

Country. *Pātria*, ae, f.

Courage. *Virtus*, *virtutis*, f.

Crown. *Cōrōna*, ae, f.

D.

Daily. *Quotidīanūs*, ã, ūm.

Daughter. *Filiā*, ae, f.

Day. *Diēs*, *diēi*, m. See 119, note.

Dear. *Cārūs*, ã, ūm.

Declare. *Indicō*, *indicērē*, *indixi*, *indictūm*.

Delight. *Dēlectō*, *ärē*, *ävī*, *ätūm*.

Desirous of. *Cūplūs*, ã, ūm.; *ävīdūs*, ã, ūm.

Did. Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.

Diligence. *Diligētiā*, ae, f.

Diligent. *Diligenz*, *dūligenzūs*.

Do. Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.

E.

Eight. *Octō*. See 175, 2.

Eighth. *Octāvūs*, ã, ūm.

Enemy. *Hostis*, *hostis*, m. and f.

Exercise. *Exerceō*, *exercērē*, *exercut*, *exercitūm*.

Exile. *Exsūl*, *exsūls*, m. and f.

Expect. *Exspectō*, *ärē*, *ävī*, *ätūm*.

F.

Father. *Pātēr*, *pātrīs*, m.

Father-in-law. *Sōcēr*, *sōcēri*, m.

Fertile. *Fertīls*, ã.

Fidelity. *Fidēs*, *fidēi*, f.

Field. *Agēr*, *ägri*, m.

Fifth. *Quintūs*, ã, ūm.

Fifty. *Quinquāgīntā*. See 175, 2.

Fight. *Pugnō*, *ärē*, *ävī*, *ätūm*.

Finish. *Finīō*, *irē*, *ivī*, *itūm*.

Five. *Quinque*. See 175, 2.

Flee. *Fūgiō*, *fūgērē*, *fūgī*, *fūgitūm*.

Flower. *Flōs*, *flōrīs*, m.

Fly. *Vōlō*, *ärē*, *ävī*, *ätūm*.

Foot. *Pēs*, *pēdīs*, m.

Fond of. *Amans*, *ämanīs*.

For. *Prō*, prep. with abl. In the sense of because of, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of for the benefit of, by the Dative (384).

Fortify. *Mūniō*, *irē*, *ivī*, *itūm*.

Four. *Quattuōr*. See 175, 2.

Fourth. *Quartūs*, ã, ūm.

Friend. *Amīcūs*, i, m.

Friendship. *Amīctiā*, ae, f.

From. *A*, ãb, prep. with abl.

Fruit. *Fructūs*, us, m.

G.

Garden. *Hortūs*, i, m.

Gaul. *Gallūs*, i, m.

Gem. *Gemmā*, ae, f.

General. *Dux*, *dūcts*, m. and f.

Gift. *Dōnūm*, i, n.

Glory. *Glōriā*, ae, f.

Gold. *Aurūn*, i, n.

Golden. *Aureūs*, ã, ūm.

Good. *Bōnūs, ā, ūm.*

Goodness. *Bōnītās, bōnītāls, f.*

Govern. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.*

Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*

Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*

Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*

Guard. *Custōdiō, irē, iūi, iūm.*

H.

Had. *Oftēn the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*

Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibāls, m.*

Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*

Have. *Hābēō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm.*

Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.

He, she, it. *Is, eā, id; illē, illā, illūd.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.

He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

Hear. *Audiō, irē, iūi, iūm.*

High. *Altūs, altā, altūm.*

Himself. *Sūi (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

His. *Sūūs, ā, ūm.*

Hope (verb). *Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēī, f.*

Hour. *Hōrō, ae, f.*

Hundred. *Centūm.* See 175, 2.

I.

I. *Egō, meī.* See 184.

In. *In, prep. with abl.*

In behalf of. *Prō, prep. with abl.*

Instruct. *Erūdiō, irē, iūi, iūm.*

Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praecepiōrīs, m.*

Into. *In, prep. with acc.*

Invite. *Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*

Island. *Insula, ae, f.*

It. See he, she, it.

Italy. *Itāliā, ae, f.*

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdīcīs, m. and f.*

Justico. *Jūstītiā, ae, f.*

K.

Keep one's word. *Fidēm servārē.*

See p. 74, note 4.

Kindly. *Bēnignē, adv.*

King. *Rex, rēgīs, m.*

Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

L.

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*

Latinus. *Lātinūs, ī, m.*

Lavinia. *Lāvinīā, ae, f.*

Law. *Lex, lēgīs, f.*

Lead. *Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm.*

Lead back. *Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.*

Lead forth. *Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, eductūm.*

Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.

Leader. *Dux, dūcīs, m. and f.*

Letter. *Epistōlā, ae, f.*

Liberate. *Libērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*

Like. *Similiā, ē.*

Love. *Amō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Mācēdōniā, ae, f.*

Man. *Hōmō, hōminīs, m.* *Vīr, vīri,* m. The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.

Many. *Multī, ae, ā, plur.*

May, can. *Signs of the Present Subjunctive.*

May have, can have. *Signs of the Perfect Subjunctive.*

Me. See I.

Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, could, would, should. <i>Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	Please. <i>Plāceō, plācērē, plācuī, plācūtūm.</i>	
Might have, could have, would have, should have. <i>Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.</i>	Pleasing. <i>Grātūs, ā, ūm.</i>	
Mind. <i>Anīmūs, ī, m.</i>	Pleasure. <i>Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f.</i>	
Moat. <i>Fossā, ae, f.</i>	Plough. <i>Arō, ārārē, ārāvī, ārātūm.</i>	
Money. <i>Pēcūnīā, ae, f.</i>	Plunder (verb). <i>Spōliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i>	
Month. <i>Mēnsis, mensīs, m.</i>	Practise. <i>Exerceō, exercērē, exercuiī, exercūtūm.</i>	
More. <i>Sign of the Comparative degree.</i> See 160.	Praise (verb). <i>Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i>	
Most. <i>Sign of the Superlative degree.</i> See 160.	Praise (noun). <i>Laus, laudīs, f.</i>	
Mound. <i>Aggēr, aggērīs, m.</i>	Precept. <i>Praeceptūm, ī, n.</i>	
Mountain. <i>Mons, monīs, m.</i>	Predict. <i>Praedicō, praedicērē, praedīxī, praedictūm. .</i>	
Much. <i>Multūm, adv.</i>	Present (noun). <i>Dōnūm, ī, n.</i>	
My. <i>Meūs, ā, ūm.</i> See 185.	Publius. <i>Publiūs, ī, m.</i>	
<i>N.</i>		
Name. <i>Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, n.</i>	Punish. <i>Pūniō, īrē, īvī, ītūm.</i>	
Nightingale. <i>Luscīnīā, ae, f.</i>	Pupil. <i>Discīpūlūs, ī, m.</i>	
Noble. <i>Nōbīlīs, ē.</i>	Put to flight. <i>Fūgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i>	
Not. <i>Nōn, adv.</i> Interrogative, <i>nonnē.</i>	<i>Q.</i>	
<i>O.</i>		
Obey. <i>Pāreō, pārērē, pāruī, pārītūm.</i>	Queen. <i>Rēgīnā, ae, f.</i>	
Observe. <i>Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i>	<i>R.</i>	
Occupy. <i>Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i>	Receive. <i>Accīpīō, accīpērē, accēpī, acceptūm.</i>	
Of. <i>Denoted by the Genitive.</i> See 393.	Reign, royal authority. <i>Regnūm, ī, n.</i>	
Of itself. <i>Pēr sē.</i>	Renowned. <i>Clārūs, ā, ūm.</i>	
On. <i>Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.</i> See 426.	Reside. <i>Hābīlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.</i>	
One. <i>Unūs, ā, ūm.</i> See 176.	Rhine. <i>Rhēnūs, ī, m.</i>	
Oration. <i>Orātiō, īrātiōnīs, f.</i>	River. <i>Annīs, amnīs, m.</i>	
Orator. <i>Orātōr, īrātōrīs, m.</i>	Roman. <i>Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.</i>	
Our. <i>Nostēr, trā, trūm.</i>	Roman, a Roman. <i>Rōmānūs, ī, m.</i>	
<i>P.</i>		
Parent. <i>Pārēns, pārentīs, m. and f.</i>	Rome. <i>Rōma, ae, f.</i>	
Philip. <i>Philippūs, ī, m.</i>	Romulus. <i>Rōmūlūs, ī, m.</i>	
Pisistratus. <i>Pisistrātūs, ī, m.</i>	Rule. <i>Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.</i>	
<i>S.</i>		
Safety. <i>Sālūs, sālūtīs, f.</i>	Safety. <i>Sālūs, sālūtīs, f.</i>	
Same. <i>Idēm, eādēm, īdēm.</i> See 186.	Same. <i>Idēm, eādēm, īdēm.</i> See 186.	
Say. <i>Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm.</i>	Say. <i>Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm.</i>	

Save. *Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
 Scipio. *Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.*
 Senator. *Sēnātōr, sēnātōris, m.*
 Serve. *Serviō, īrē, īvī, ītūm.*
 Servius. *Serviūs, ūs, m.*
 Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
 Shepherd. *Pastōr, pastōris, m.*
 Should, should have. See *might, might have.*
 Show. *Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*
 Silent. See *be silent.*
 Silver. *Argentūm, ū, n.*
 Sing. *Cantō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
 Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*
 Six. *Sex.* See 175, 2.
 Slave. *Servūs, ū, m.*
 Sleep. *Dormiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm.*
 Soldier. *Milēs, milētis, m.*
 Somebody, some one. *Alīquis, alīquād, alīquid, or alīquod.* See 191.
 Son. *Filiūs, ūs, m.*
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnēri, m.*
 Song. *Carmēn, carmēnis, n.*
 Speak. *Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm.*
 State. *Civitās, civitātis, f.*
 Strengthen. *Firmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
 Sun. *Sōl, sōltis, m.*
 Sunset. *Occāsūs sōltis.*
 Sword. *Glādiūs, ūs, m.*

T.

Take. *Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm.*
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
 Tarquin. *Tarquiniūs, ūs, m.*
 Tell. *Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm.*
 Temple. *Templūm, ū, n.*

Ten. *Dēcēm.* See 175, 2.
 Terrify. *Terreō, terrērē, terrui, terrētūm.*
 Than. *Quām.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.
 That. *Illē, illā, illūd.* See 186.
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
 Their. *Suūs, ū, ūm.*
 Then. *Tūm, adv.*
 Thing. *Rēs, rētī, f.*
 This. *Hīc, haec, hōc.* See 186.
 Three. *Trēs, triū.* See 176.
 Time. *Tempūs, tempōris, n.*
 To. *Ad, ūn,* preps. with acc. *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384.
 True. *Vērūs, ū, ūm.*
 Truth. *Vērūm, ū, n.*
 Tullia. *Tulliā, ae, f.*
 Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* See 176.
 Tyrant. *Tyrannūs, ū, m.*

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*
 Useful. *Utīlis, ū.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*
 Valuable. *Prētiōsūs, ū, ūm.*
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.
 Victoria. *Victōriā, ae, f.*
 Victory. *Victōriā, ae, f.*
 Violate. *Viōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
 Virtue. *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambūlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
 War. *Bellūm, ū, n.*

Way. *Viā, ae, f.*

Well. *Bēnē, adv.*

Who, which (relative). *Qui, quae, quōd.* See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative) ?

Quis, quae, quid? qui, quae, quod?

See 188.

Wide. *Lātūs, ā, ūm.*

Wife. *Conjux, conjugis, f.*

Will, will have. See *shall, shall have.*

Winter. *Hiemis, hiemis, f.*

Wisdom. *Sāpientiā, ae, f.*

Wise. *Sāpiens, sāpientis.*

With. *Cum, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone.*

See 414.

Word. *Verbūm, ī, n. To keep one's word, fidēm servārē.* See p. 74, note 4.

Would, would have. See *might, might have.*

Wound. *Vulnērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

Write. *Scribō, scribērē, scripsi, scriptūm.*

Y.

Year. *Annūs, ī, m.*

You. *Tū, tuī. See 184.*

Your. *Tūs, ā, ūm; vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm.*

Yourself. *Tū, tū ipse.*

Arnold's Latin Course :

I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

Revised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, 859 pages.

II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Revised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER. D.D. 12mo, 856 pages.

III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New Edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, &c. 12mo, 850 pages.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which nature herself points out to the child learning his mother tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put in the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synomyms are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

From N. WHEELER, Principal of Worcester County High School.

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an interest in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.

"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now."

Arnold's First Latin Book ;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire, by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

From WM. RUSSELL, Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.

"The form which this work has taken under the skilful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

From GEORGE CAPRON, Principal of Worcester High School.

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

From J. R. BOISSE, Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

Second Latin Book;

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

From J. A. SPENCER, D.D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skilfully formed exercises with systematic instruction."

From J. J. OWEN, D.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

By A. HARKNESS, Ph.D., Professor in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface :

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language ; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.

6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

D. APPLETON & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., New York Free Academy.

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminent; practical, because it is truly philosophical."

From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this a useful Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features.

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, Principal Cambridge High School.

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammar in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

From Mr. D. B. HAGER, Prince Eliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.

"This is, in my opinion, by far the best Latin Grammar ever published. It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

D. APPLETON & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON and Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, of the Wesleyan University.

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

From Mr. H. A. PRATT, Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

From Mr. I. F. CADY, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

From Mesarah S. THURBER and T. B. STOCKWELL, Public High School, Providence.

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

From Mr. G. B. GOFF, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, University of Vermont.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

From Mr. H. OSCRITT, Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, Principal of Franklin Academy.

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use. In the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

From Mr. C. C. CHASE, Principal of Lowell High School.

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

From Mr. J. KIMBALL, High School, Dorchester, Mass.

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."

D. APPLETON & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

HARKNESS'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

12mo, 355 pages.

Although this work has been published only a few weeks, it is recommended by
and introduced into a large number of Colleges and Classical Schools, among which are
the following:

BOWDOIN COLLEGE, Brunswick, Me.
BATES' COLLEGE, Lewiston, Maine.
LEWISTON FALLS ACADEMY, Auburn, Me.
DOVER HIGH SCHOOL, Dover, N. H.
DARTMOUTH COLLEGE.
NORWICH UNIVERSITY, Norwich, Vt.
GLENWOOD LADIES' SEMINARY, Brattleboro, Vt.
AMHERST COLLEGE, Amherst, Mass.
TUFT'S COLLEGE, Medford, Mass.
PHILLIPS' ACADEMY, Andover, Mass.
STATE NORMAL SCHOOL, Framingham, Mass.
HIGHLAND SCHOOL, Worcester, Mass.
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, Mass.
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Springfield, Mass.
ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL, Roxbury, Mass.
LAWRENCE ACADEMY, Groton, Mass.
AUBURNDALE FEMALE SEMINARY, Auburndale, Mass.
SPENCER ACADEMY, Spencer, Mass.
JAMAICA PLAIN HIGH SCHOOL, Jamaica Plain, Mass.
BROWN UNIVERSITY, Providence, R. I.
UNIVERSITY GRAMMAR SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.
FRIENDS' BOARDING SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.
WARREN HIGH SCHOOL, Warren, R. I.
PROVIDENCE CONFERENCE SEMINARY, East Greenwich, R. I.
WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY, Middletown, Ct.
FREE ACADEMY, Norwich, Ct.
NEW LONDON ACADEMY, New London, Ct.
YALE COLLEGE, New Haven, Ct.
ROCHESTER UNIVERSITY, Rochester, N. Y.
MADISON UNIVERSITY, Hamilton, N. Y.
NEW YORK FREE ACADEMY, New York.
CORTLAND ACADEMY, Homer, N. Y.
OSWEGO HIGH SCHOOL, Oswego, N. Y.
HAMILTON COLLEGE, Clinton, N. Y.
HOBERT'S FREE COLLEGE, Geneva, N. Y.
CANANDAIGUA ACADEMY, Canandaigua, N. Y.
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, N. J.
HAVERFORD COLLEGE, West Haverford, Pa.
CLASSICAL AND MILITARY SCHOOL, Columbia, Pa.
SHURTLEFF COLLEGE, Upper Alton, Ill.
IOWA STATE UNIVERSITY, Iowa City, Iowa.
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Germania and Agricola of Caius Cornelius Tacitus :

With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo, 193 pages.

Tacitus's account of Germany and life of Agricola are among the most fascinating and instructive Latin classics. The present edition has been prepared expressly for college classes, by one who knows what they need. In it will be found: 1. A Latin text, approved by all the more recent editors. 2. A copious illustration of the grammatical constructions, as well as of the rhetorical and poetical usages peculiar to Tacitus. In a writer so concise it has been deemed necessary to pay particular regard to the connection of thought, and to the particles as the hinges of that connection. 3. Constant comparisons of the writer with the authors of the Augustan age, for the purpose of indicating the changes which had already been wrought in the language of the Roman people. 4. An embodiment in small compass of the most valuable labors of such recent German critics as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kiesling, Dronke, Roth, Ruperti, and Walther.

From Prof. LINCOLN, of Brown University.

"I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the Life of Tacitus and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

The History of Tacitus

By W. S. TYLER. With Notes for Colleges. 12mo, 453 pages.

The text of Tacitus is here presented in a form as correct as a comparison of the best editions can make it. Notes are appended for the student's use, which contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archaeological, and historical illustrations that are necessary to render the author intelligible. It has been the constant aim of the editor to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them to a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times. Indexes to the notes, and to the names of persons and places, render reference easy.

From Prof. HACKETT of Newton Theological Seminary.

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the *Germania* and *Agricola*. They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic, as almost any thing that I have yet seen."

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Arnold's Greek Reading Book, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 238 pages.

First Lessons in Greek;* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

Hadley's Greek Grammar,* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

— Elements of the Greek Grammar. 12mo.

Herodotus, Selections from; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

Homer's Iliad, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

— **Odyssey**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

Kuhner's Greek Grammar. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

— Homer's Iliad. 12mo. 750 pages.

— Greek Reader. 12mo.

— Acts of the Apostles, in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

— Homer's Odyssey. Tenth Edition. 12mo.

— Thucydides. With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

— Xenophon's Cyropædia. Eighth Edition. 12mo.

Plato's Apology and Crito.* With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

Anabasis. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 893 pages.

Anabasis. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

Cyclopædia, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

Sophocles's Edipus Tyrannus. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 188 pages.

HEBREW AND SYRIAC.

Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.

D. APPLETON & CO., 90, 92 & 94 Grand Street, N. Y.,

PUBLISH UPWARD OF

800 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.

A single copy for examination, of any of the works marked thus *, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any Teacher remitting one-half of its price. Any of the other will be sent by mail, postage prepaid, upon receipt of full retail price.

